

37056

MASSACHUSETTS
THE GREAT
BATTLE OF THE UNITED STATES
OF THE CONSTITUTION
BOOKS PRINTED ON IN
DISSENT

2 Isaac Marshall

T H E
C I T I Z E N and C O U N T R Y M A N ' S
E X P E R I E N C E D
F A R R I E R.
C O N T A I N I N G,

- I. THE most best approved Method of Ordering, Dieting, Exercising, Purging, Scouring, and Cleansing of Horses: Also choice Restoratives to cheer the Heart, procure an Appetite, and to clear the Lungs and Pipes, so as to strengthen Wind, and give large Breath to the Running or Race-Horse.
- II. A CERTAIN sure Method to know the true State of any Horse's Body; as to Sickness or Health.
- III. THE true Shape of a Horse explained: With choice Directions for buying.
- IV. An experienced and approved Method for Raising of Horses, as to Ordering, Keeping, &c. Also Mares, Colts and Stallions.
- V. A Sure and certain Rule to know the Age of any Horse, from one Year to ten, with good Observations as he further advances in Years.
- VI. The best and experienced Way of keeping the common Hackney, or Hunting Horse, so as to keep him lively, cheerful, free from Colds, Strains, Windgalls, and gross Humours.
- VII. An approved Method of Purging, Bleeding and Feeding Cattle; with choice approved Receipts for the Diseases they are incident to; with Signs to know the Disease, and Directions for the Use of Medicines.

To all which is added,

A valuable and fine Collection of the surest and best Receipts in the known World for the Cure of all Maladies and Distempers that are incident to Horses of what Kind soever, with Directions to know what is the Ailment, or Disease.

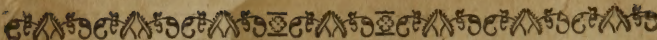
By J. MARKHAM, G. JEFFERIES, and
DISCREET INDIANS.

L O N D O N, Printed;-----and,
W I L M I N G T O N, Re-printed, and Sold by JAMES
A D A M S, at his *Printing-Office*, 1764.

T O T H E
R E A D E R.

THE Consideration of the great Hardship the Generality of the People of this and the neighbouring Provinces laboured under for want of Directions in Time of Necessity, was the first Motive that introduced the publishing this Volumn, which I have since been advised by some Friends to have printed. It really was on my Mind some Years ago; and the above Reason appearing very strong, I then concluded if I could get a Collection of suitable approved Receipts from able Farriers in this Country, of their own Performances, I would immediately commit them, with what I had before known to be truly experienced, to the Press: The which being now accomplished, and the whole laid down to the Understanding of all Capacities, so that none may be at a Loss for present Help that are Masters of one of these Books. The Plants and Herbs that are in this Work used, are here described, their Qualities explain'd, with full Directions for Application, according to the Nature of the Disease or Ailment. So, Friendly Reader, thou may find here a present Remedy for any Disorder or Ailment that Horses or Cattle are incident to, and a speedy Cure, if not incurable; with many other choice Things, taken from the best Observations. If it answers the End for which thou buyest, which I am not in the least doubtful, I shall be well satisfied, and rest myself thy sincere

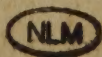
Friend and Wellwisher,



WE whose Names are hereunto annexed have, by an appointed Meeting, at the House of JOHN BALDWIN, in Kennet Township, Chester County, revised and examined the Copy and Manuscripts of the Citizen and Countryman's Experienced Farrier, now intended for the Press by JOHN MILLIS, and are of Opinion, that it will be of great Service to the Publick in general.

Third Month

22, 1763,

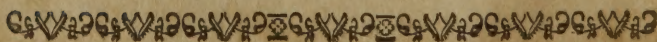


WILLIAM PENNOCK,

HUMPHREY MARSHALL,

SAMUEL SELLERS,

GEORGE GILPIN.



A N

INTRODUCTION

To the R E A D E R:

O R,

A Gaining of SATISFACTION to all Reasonable Practisers, and CONFUTING the wilful Self-conceited.

I Will not dispute the several Opinions of Men in this Kingdom, touching the keeping of the Running Horse, because I know many are idle and frivolous, some uncertain, and a few in the right way; only in this I will clear one Paradox, which is strongly maintained, and infinitely pursued by many of our best Professors; and that is, the limitation and length of time, for the preparing or making ready of an Horse for a Match or great Wager.

There be divers who affirm an Horse which is exceeding fat, foul, newly taken from Grass or Soil, or lofty, liberal, and unbounded feeding, cannot be brought to performance of his best labour under six Months, five is too little, and four an act of impossibility; by which they rob their noble Masters of half a year's pleasure, thrust upon them a tiring charge to make the sport loathsome, and get nothing but a Cloak for ignorance, and a few false got Crowns, which melt as they are possessed.

Yet as Hereticks cite Scripture, so these find reasons to defend want of knowledge.

As, the danger of so early exercise.

The offence of grease too suddenly broken.

The moving of evil humours too hastily, which leads to mortal sickness.

And the moderation or helping of all these by a slow proceeding, and bringing of the Horse into order by degrees and times, or, as I may say, by an ignorant sufferance.

These reasons, I know, have the shew of a good ground for ; the early exercise is dangerous, but not if free from violence.

To break grease too suddenly, is an offence unsufferable, for it puts both the Limbs and the Life in hazard, but not if purged away by Scowrings.

The hasty stirring up of humours in the Body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot but breed sickness.

But not where discretion and judgment evacuateth them in wholesome sweats and moderate stirrings.

And for the moderation of all these, by the tediousness of time, as too Months for the first, two Months for the second, and as many for the last, it is like the curing of a Gangreen in an old Man, better to die than be dismembered ; better lose the prize, than bear the charge ; For I dare appeal to any noble judgment (whose Purse hath experience in these actions) if six Months preparation, and the dependances belonging to it, and his person, do not devour up an hundred pound wager.

But, you will demand of me, what limitation of time I will allow for this purpose of preparation ? And I answer, that two Months time is sufficient at any time of the year whatsoever ; and he that cannot do it in two Months, shall never do it in fifteen,

But, reply they, no scowring is to be allowed; for they are Physical, then unnatural; they force nature, and so hurt nature; they make sickness, and so impair health; because nature worketh every thing herself, and though she be longer, yet she hath less danger.

I confess that slobberause Scowrings, which are stufte up with poisonous ingredients, cannot chuse but bring forth infirmity; but wholesome Scowrings, that are composed of beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion sickness nor any manner of infirmity, but bring away grease and all manner of foulness in that kind, that one Week shall effect and cleanse away more than two Months of delatory and doubtful forbearance.

Because no Man in this lingering course can certainly tell which way the grease and other foulness will avoid: As, whether into his Ordure, which is the safest; into sweat, which is hazzardous; into his Limbs, which is mischievous; or remain and putrify in his Body, which is mortally dangerous; since the issue of all these falleth out according to the strength and State of the Horse's Body, and the diligence of the Keeper: And if either the one fail in power, or the other in care, farewell the Horse for that year. All this Envy cannot chuse but confess; only they have but one broken Crutch to support them, which is, they know no scowring, therefore they will allow of no scowring. Against Barbarism I will not dispute, only I appeal to Art and Discretion, whether Purgation or Sufferance (when Nature is offended) be the better doers.

To conclude, two Months I allow for preparation; and according to that time, I have laid directions. My humble suit is out of a sincere opinion to truth and justice, so to allow or disallow, to refrain or imitate,



O F T H E

R U N N I N G H O R S E,

And divers other

C H O I C E S E C R E T S.

*The first Ordering of the Running Horse, according to
the several estates of their Bodies.*

When a Horse is matched (or to be matched) for a running Course, you are principally to regard the estate of the Body in which the Horse is at the time of his Matching: and this estate of Body I divide into three several kinds.

1. The first is, if he be very fat, foul, and either newly taken from Grass or Soil.

2. The second, if he be extream lean and poor, either through over-riding, disorder, or other infirmity.

3. The third, if he be in a good and well-liking estate, having had good usage and moderate exercise.

If

If your Horſe be in the firſt eſtate of his body, you ſhall take longer time for matching, keeping, and bringing into order, as two Months at the leaſt, or more, as you can conclude your wager.

If your Horſe be in the ſecond eſtate of Body, that is, very poor, then you ſhall alſo take as long time as you may ; yet you need not ſo much as in the former, both becauſe greaſe cannot much offend, and exerciſe may go hand in hand with feeding.

If your Horſe be in the third eſtate of Body, (which is a mean betwixt the other extremes) then a Month or fix Weeks may be time ſufficient to diet him for his match.

Now as you regard theſe general eſtates of Bodies, ſo you muſt have an eye to certain particular eſtates of bodies ; as if a Horſe be fat and foul, yet of free and ſpending nature, apt quickly to conſume, and loſe his Fleſh ; this Horſe muſt not have ſo ſtrict an hand, neither can he indure ſo violent exerciſe, as he that is of a hard diſpoſition, and will feed and be fat upon all meats and all exerciſes.

Again, if your Horſe be in extream poverty, through diſorder or miſuſage, yet is by nature very hardy, and apt both ſoon to recover his fleſh, and long to hold it : Then over this Horſe you ſhall by no means hold ſo liberal and tender an hand, nor forbear that exerciſe which otherwiſe you would do to the Horſe which is of a tender nature, a weak ſtomach, and a free ſpirit. Provided always, you have regard to his Limbs ; the imperfection of his Lameneſs.

Thus you ſee how to look into the Eſtates of Horſes Bodies, and what time to take for your Matchings.

I will

I will now descend to their several orderings and dietings; and because in the fat Horse is contained both the lean Horse, and the Horse in reasonable estate of Body, I will in him shew all the secrets and observations which are to be imployed in the dieting and ordering of all three, without any omission or reservation whatsoever. For truth, Sir, I have vowed unto you, and truth I will present you.

How to diet an Horse for a Match that is fat, foul, and either newly taken from Grass or Soil, being the first Fortnight.

IF you match an Horse that is fat and foul, either by running at Grass, or standing at Soil, or any other means of rest, or too high keeping, you shall for the first fortnight at least rise early in the Morning before day, or at the spring of day, according to the time of the year, and having put on his Bridle, wash'd in Beer, and tied to the Rack, take away the dung and other foulness of the Stable, then you shall dress the Horse exceeding well; that is to say,

You shall first curry him all over from the head to the tail, from the top of the shoulder to the knee, and from the top of the buttock to the hinder Cambril; then dust him all over, either with a clean Dusting-cloth, or with an Horse's tail, or such-like thing, made fast to an handle: then curry or rub him all over with the French Brush, beginning with his forehead, temples and cheeks, so down his neck, shoulders, and forelegs, even to the setting on of his Hoofs, so along his sides, and under his belly; and lastly, all about his buttocks, and hinder legs, even to the ground. Then you shall go over all those parts which the Brush hath touched, with your wet hand, and not leave, as near as you can, one loose hair

hair about him, nor one wet hair ; for what your hands did wet, your hands must rub dry again ; you shall also with your wet hands cleanse his Sheath, his Yard, his Stones or Cods, and his Tuel ; and indeed, not leave any secret place uncleansed, as ears, nostrils, fore-bowels, and between his hinder thighs. Then you shall take an hair-cloath, and with it rub the Horse all over in every part, but especially his Face, Eyes, Cheeks, between the Chops, on the top of his forehead, in the nape of the neck, and down his legs, fetlocks, and about his pasterns.

Lastly, You shall take a clean woollen cloth, and with it you shall rub the Horse all over, beginning with his head and face, and so passing through every part of the Horse's Body or Limbs, which hath been before mentioned ; then take a wet Mane-comb, and comb down mane and tail. When this Work is finished, take a fair large body-cloth, of thick warm Houfswive's Kersey, (if it be in the winter Season ; or of fine Cotten, or other light stuff, if it be in the summer Season) and fold it round about the Horse's Body : then clap on his Saddle, and girt the foremost Girth pretty strait, and the other Girth somewhat slack, and wisp it on each side the Horse's heart, that both the Girths may be of equal straitness, then put before his Breast a warm breast-cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders.

When the Horse is thus accoutred, and made ready, you shall take a little beer into your mouth, and spirt into the Horse's mouth, and so draw him out of the stable, and take his back, leaving some ordinary Groom behind you, to trim up your Stable, to carry forth Dung, and shake and toss up your Litter. For you are to understand, and it is a general principle, that your Horse must stand upon good store

store of fresh dry Litter continually, both night and day ; and it must ever be of Wheat-straw, if possible ; or Oat-straw, if forced by necessity. As for Barley-straw, and Rye-straw, they are both unwholesome and dangerous ; the one doth heart-burn, the other causeth Scowring.

When you are thus mounted, you shall walk forth your Horse a foot-pace, (which we call racking) for you must neither amble nor trot, at least a mile or two, or more, upon smooth and sound ground, and as near as you can to the steepest hills you can find ; there gallop your Horse very gently up those steep hills, and rack or walk him softly down, that he may cool as much one way, as he warmeth another. And when you have thus exercised him a pretty space, then seeing the Sun beginning to rise, or prettily risen, you shall walk your Horse down either to some fresh River, or some clean Pond that is fed with a sweet Spring, and there let your Horse drink at his pleasure.

After he hath drunk, you shall gallop and exercise him moderately as you did before, then walk him a pretty space, and after offer him more water : If he drink, then gallop him again ; if he refuse, then gallop him to occasion thirst ; and thus always give him exercise both before and after water.

When he hath drunk (as you think sufficiently) then bring him home gently, without a wet hair about him : When you are come to the Stable-door, (before which your Groom shall throw all his foul Litter continually from time to time) you shall there alight from his back, and by whistling, stretching the Horse upon the straw, and raising the straw up under the Horse, see if you can make him piss ; which if at first he do not, yet with a little custom he will soon be brought unto

unto it ; and it is an wholesome action, both for the Horſe's health, and for the cleanly keeping of the Stable.

When theſe things are performed, you ſhall then bring the Horſe into his Stall ; and firſt tie his head up to the Rack in his bridle, then with hard wiſps rub all his four Legs down with as great ſtrength as you can : Then unlooſe his breaſt-cloth, rub his head, neck, and breaſt exceeding much with a dry cloth : then take off his Saddle, and hang it by ; and after take off his Body-cloth ; then rub over all the Horſe's Body and Limbs, eſpecially his back where the Saddle ſtood ; and then cloath him up firſt with a linnen ſheet, then over it a good ſtrong houſing-cloth, and above it his woollen Body-cloth, which in the Winter is not amiſs to have lined with ſome thin Cotten, or other woollen ſtuff, but in the heat of Summer the Kerſey itſelf is ſufficient.

When you have girt theſe Cloths about him, ſtop his ſurſingle round with reaſonable big, ſoft and thick Wiſps ; for with them he will lie at beſt eaſe, becauſe the ſmall hard Wiſps are ever hurtful.

After your Horſe is thus cloathed up, you ſhall then pick his feet, and ſtop them up with Cow-dung, and then throw into his Rack a little Bundle of Hay, ſo much as a Half-penny Bottle in a dear Inn, well duſted, and hard bound up together ; and this he ſhall tear out as he ſtandeth on his Bridle.

After the Horſe hath ſtood on his Bridle more than an hour, or an hour and a half, you ſhall then come to him, and firſt rub his head, face, and the nape of his neck with a clean rubber, made of new rough hempen Cloth, for this is excellent for the head, and diſſolveth all groſs and filthy humours ; and then you ſhall draw his Bridle, and with a very clean Cloth, make the Manger ſo clean as may be ; and if he hath

hath scattered any Hay therein, you shall gather it up and throw it back into his Rack ; then you shall take the quantity of a quart or better, of sweet, dry, old and clean-dressed Oats, of which the heaviest and the whitest are the best, as those which we call the Polana Oats, or the Cut-oats, for those only are wholesome, the others, which are unsweet, breed infirmity, those which are moist cause swelling in the Body, those which are new breed worms, and pain in the Belly, and they which are half dressed deceive the Stomach, and bring the Horse to ruin. As for the black Oats, though they are tolerable in the time of necessity, yet they make foul dung, and hinder a man's knowledge in the State of the Horse's Body.

This quart of Oats you shall put into a Seive that is somewhat less than a Riddle, and a thought bigger than a Reeing-Sieve, such a one as will let light Oats go through, but will keep a full Oat from scattering. In this Sieve you shall ree, dress, and toss your Oats very much, that there may be neither dust, nor any other foul thing in them, and so give them to the Horse to eat ; and if he eat them with a good Stomach, you may then sift, and give him as much more ; and so let him rest till it be near eleven of the Clock. Then come to the Stable again, and having rub'd the Horse's Head, neck, and face, you shall then take another Quart or better of Oats, and as before, toss and ree them through your Sieve, and so give them to the Horse. Then closing up your windows and light, that the Horse may remain so dark as is possible, leave him till one of the Clock. And here you are to understand, that the darker you keep your Horse in your absence, the better it is ; and it will occasion him to feed, lie down and take his rest, where otherwise he would not. And therefore

we commonly use to arm the Stalls wherein those Horses stand, round about, and aloft, and over the Rack with strong Canvas, both for darkness, warmth, and that no filth may come near the Horse.

At one o' Clock, or thereabouts, come to the Horse again, and sift and dress him another Quart of Oats; as before shewed, and give them him; after you have rubbed well his face, head, and nape of the neck, then putting away his Dung, and making the Stable clean and sweet, give him a little knob of Hay, and so leave him till four a Clock in the Evening, if it be in the Summer; after three, if it be in the Winter and short Season.

At four a Clock in the Evening, come again to the Stable, and having made all things clean, then bridle up the Horse; having wet the snaffle with Beer, and tied him up to the Rack, then take off his Clothes and dress him in all points, and every way as was shewed you in the Morning. After he is dressed, then clothe and saddle him as was also shewed for the Morning: then bring him forth, and do your best to make him piss and dung upon the foul Litter at the Stable-door: Then mount his back, and ride him forth as you did in the morning, but not to the Hills, if possible you can find any other plain and level ground, as Meadow, Pasture, or any other Earth, especially if it lie along by the River. But in this case you can be no Chuser, but must take the most convenient ground you can find, to make a Vertue of Necessity. There air your Horse in all points in the Evening as you did in the Morning, galloping him both before and after his water; then racking him gently up and down, in your racking you must observe even from the Stable door in all your passages, especially when you would have your Horse to empty himself, to let
him

him smell upon every old and new dung you meet withal, for this will make him empty his Body, and repair his Stomach.

After you have watered your Horse, and spent the Evening in airing till within Night, (for nothing is more wholesome or sooner consumeth foulness than early and late airings) you shall then air him home to the Stable-door, there alight, and whatsoever you did in the Morning either within doors or without, do the same also now at Night, and so leave the Horse on his Bridle an hour, or an hour and half; then come to him again, and as you did in the Forenoon, so do now; rub him well, draw his bridle, cleanse the Manger, put up his scattered Hay, sift him a quart and better of Oats, and give them him, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night.

At nine of the Clock at night, which is bed-time for both your Horse and yourself; come unto him, and first rub down his legs hard with hard wisps, then with a clean cloth rub his face, head, chaps, nape of the neck and fore-parts. Then turn up his cloths, and rub over his Fillets, Buttocks, and hinder parts; then put down his cloths, and sift him a Quart of Oats, and give them him. Then put into his Rack a little bundle of Hay, (as hath been before shewed) toss up his Litter, and make his bed soft, and so betake both him and yourself to your rests till the next morning.

The next morning (as the morning before) come to the Horse before day or at the break, according to the Season of the year, and do every thing without the omission of any one particular, as hath been formerly declared.

And thus you shall keep your Horse constantly for the first Fortnight; in which, by this double

daily exercise, you shall so harden his Flesh, and consume his foulness, that the next fortnight (if you be a temperate man) you may adventure to give him gentle heats.

Now touching his Heats, you are to take to yourself these four Considerations.

First, That two heats in the Week is a sufficient proportion for any Horse, of what condition or state of body soever.

Secondly, That one Heat should ever be given upon that day in the Week on which he is to be run his Match. As thus, for Example :

If your Match is to be run upon the Monday, then your fittest heating days are Mondays and Fridays, and the Monday to be ever the sharper Heat ; both because it is the day of his Match, and there is three days respite betwixt it and the other Heat.

If the Match-day be on the Tuesday, then the Heating days are Tuesdays and Saturdays.

If it be on Wednesday, then the Heating-days are Wednesdays and Saturdays, by reason of the Sabbath.

If it be on Thursday, then the Heating-days are Thursdays and Mondays ; and so of the rest.

Thirdly, You shall give no heat (except in case of extremity) in very rainy and foul Weather ; but rather to differ hours, and change times, for it is unwholesome and dangerous. And therefore in case of Showers and uncertain Weather, you shall be sure to provide for your Horse a warm lin'd hood, with linen ears, and the nape of the neck lined, to keep out rain, for nothing is more dangerous than cold wet falling into the Ears, upon the nape of the Neck and the Fillets.

Fourthly,

Fourthly and lastly, Observe to give your Heats (the weather being seasonable) as early in the Morning as you can, that is, by the spring of the day : But by no means in the dark, for it is to the Horse unwholesome and unpleasant, to the man a great testimony of folly, and to both an act of danger and precipitation.

The second Fortnight's Keeping.

NOW to descend to your second Fortnight's Keeping, touching your first approach to the Stable, and all other by-respects, as cleansing, shaking up of Litter, and the like, you shall do all things as in the first Fortnight. Only before you put on his Bridle, you shall give him a Quart or better, of clean sifted Oats, which as soon as he hath eaten, you shall then bridle him up, and dress him in all points, as was declared in the first fortnight : you shall cloath him, saddle him, air, water, and bring him home in all points, as in the first Fortnight ; only you shall not put any Hay in his Rack to tear out ; but only draw with your hand as much fine sweet Hay (which you shall toss and dust well) as you can well grip, and let him as he standeth on the Bridle tear it out of your hand, which if he do greedily and earnestly, then you may give him another and another, and so let him stand on the Bridle an hour or more after. Then come to him, and after rubbing, and other ceremonies, before declared, performed, sift and dust up the quantity of a Quart of Oats, and set them by : Then take a loaf of bread, that is at least three days old, made after this manner :

The First Bread.

TAKE three pecks of clean Beans, and one peck of fine Wheat, and mix them together, and grind it to pure Meal.

Then searfe and bolt through a reasonable fine Range, and knead it up with great store of harm and lightning, but with as little water as may be ; labour it in the Trough with all painfulness ; tread it, break it, and after, cover it warm, and let it lie a pretty space in the Trough to swell ; then after knead it over again, and mold it up into big Loaves, and so bake them well, and let them soak soundly ; after they are drawn from the Oven, turn the bottoms upward, and let them cool.

At three days old you may adventure to give this Bread, but hardly sooner, for nothing doth occasion surfeit, or is more dangerous than new bread : Yet if necessity compel you that you must sooner give this bread, or that the bread be dank and clammy, so as the Horse taketh distaste thereat, then cut the loaf into thin shives, and lay it abroad in a Sieve to dry, and then crumbling it small amongst his Oats, you may give it without danger.

But to return to my purpose where I left : When you have taken a loaf of this Bread of three days old, you shall chip it very well, then cut it into thin shives, and break three or four shives thereof (which may countervail the quantity of the Oats) very small, and mix it with the Oats you had before sifted, and so give them to the Horse.

About Eleven of the Clock you shall come to the Horse, and having performed your by-Ceremonies before spoken of, you shall give him the same quantity
of

of Bread and Oats as you did in the Morning, and so let him rest till the afternoon.

At one of the Clock in the afternoon (or after, if you intend not to give him an heat the next day) you shall feed him with Bread and Oats as you did in the forenoon, and so consequently every meal following for that day, observing every action and motion, as hath been before declared.

But if you intend the next day to give him an heat (to which I now bend mine aim) you shall then only give him a quart of sweet Oats, and as soon as they are eaten, put on his bridle, and tie up his head, not forgetting all by-Ceremonies before declared. Then dress him, cloath him, saddle him, air and water him, as before shewed; also bring him home, and order him, as before shewed, only give him no Hay at all.

After he hath stood an hour on the bridle, give him, as before, a quart of clean sifted Oats; when he hath eaten them, you shall then put on his head a clean sweet washt Muzzle, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night.

Now touching the use of the Muzzle, and which is the best, you shall understand, that as they are most useful, being good and rightly made; so they are dangerous and hurtful, being abused or falsely made.

The true use of them, is to keep the Horse from eating up his Litter, from knawing upon Boards and Mud-walls, and indeed to keep him from eating any thing, but what he receiveth from your hand.

These muzzles are sometimes made of leather, and stamp't full of holes, or else close, but they are unsavory and unwholesome; for if it be allom'd Leather, the Allom is offensive; if it be liquor'd, the

grease and ouze are full as unpleasant ; besides, they are to close and two hot, and both make a Horse sick, cause him to forbear rest, and retain his dung longer in his Body than otherwise he would do.

The best Summer-muzzle, is the Net-muzzle, made of strong packthread, and knit exceeding thick, and with small meshes in the bottom, and so enlarged wider and wider up to the middle of the Horse's head, and then bound about the top with strong tape, upon the near side a loop, and on the far side a long string of tape to be fastened unto the Horse's head.

The best Winter-muzzle, is that which is made of strong double Canvas, with a round bottom, and a square Lattis-window of small tape, before both his Nostrils, down to the very bottom of the Muzzle ; this must also have a loop and a string to fasten it about the Horse's head.

At nine of the Clock at night, coming to the Horse again, after your By-ceremonies, before taught, are performed, give him a quart of clean sifted Oats ; and as soon as he hath eaten them, put on his Muzzle, toss up his Litter, and leave him to his rest.

The next day, early in the Morning before day, come to the Horse (if he be standing on his feet) but if he be laid, by no means disturb him.

Now whilst he is lying, or if he be standing, take a quart of clean Oats well sifted ; and rub between your hands, and wash them in a little strong Ale or Beer ; and let them not be too moist for fear of offence, and so give them to the Horse.

As soon as he hath eaten them, bridle him up, and hang his Muzzle on some sweet place ; then uncloath him and dress him as hath been before shewed ; after put on his Body-cloth, and Breast-cloth, and
saddle

saddle him ; then being ready to go forth with him, take his Bridle-rein and draw it over the top of the Rack, so as you may draw his head aloft. Then take a new-laid Egg, wash'd clean, and break it in his mouth, make him to swallow is down ; then wash his tongue and mouth with a little Beer, and so lead him out of the Stable.

At the door see if he will piss or dung, then take his back and rack him gently to the Course : Ever and anon make him smell upon other Horses dung, whereby he may empty himself the better.

When you are come within a Mile, or thereabouts, of the starting Post, you shall alight from the Horse's back, and take off his Body-cloth and Breast-cloth, and then girt on the Saddle again : Then sending away your Groom both with those cloths and the clean dry rubbing-cloths, let him stay at the last end of the Race till you come. Then yourself rack your Horse gently up to the starting Post, and beyond ; make your Horse smell to that Post, as you shall also do at the first Post, which we call the weighing Post, that he may thereby take notice of the beginning and ending of his Course. And there start your Horse roundly and sharply at near a three quarters speed ; and according to his strength of body, ability of mind, and chearfulness of spirit, run him the whole Course through. But by no means do any thing in extremity, and above his wind and strength ; but when you find him a little yield, then give him a little ease, so that all he doth may be done with pleasure, and not with anguish : For this manner of training will make him take delight in his labour, and so encrease it ; the contrary will breed discomfort, and make exercise irksome.

Also during the time that you thus course your
B 4 Horse,

Horse, you shall with all carefulness note upon what ground he runneth best ; as whether upon the Hill, whether on the smooth Earth, or on the rough, whether on the wet or on the dry, or whether on the level, or the Earth that is somewhat rising ; and according as you find his nature and disposition, so maintain him for your own advantage.

When you have thus coursed the Course over strongly and swiftly, and after a little slightly gallopt him up and down the field, to rake his wind and chear his spirit, you shall then (your Groom being ready with your cloths, and other necessaries) ride to some warm place, as under the covert of some hedge, bushes or trees, into some hollow dry ditch, pit, or other defence from the Air, and there alight from his back, and first with a grasping Knife, or scraping Knife, as some call it, made either of some broken Sword-blade, some old broken Sythe, or for want of them, a thin piece of old hard Oaken wood, fashioned like a broad long Knife with a sharp edge : And using this with both his hands, scrape off all the sweat from your Horse in every part of him, wheresoever you find any wet : And thus do till you find there will no more sweat arise ; and ever and anon move and stir the Horse up and down, and then with dry clothes rub the Horse all over exceedingly. Then take off the Saddle, and having glassed, scraped and rubbed his back, put on his Body-cloth, and his Breast-cloth, and then set on the Saddle again and girt it ; then gallop the Horse gently forth, and again a little space, ever and anon rubbing his head, neck, and body, as you sit on his back ; then walk him about the Fields and Downs to cool him, and when you find that he drieth apace, then rack him gently homeward, sometimes racking, and sometimes

times galloping. But by no means bring him to the Stable, till you find he hath not one wet hair about him. When you have brought him to the Stable-door dry, there dismount, and having enticed him to piss and empty himself, then lead him into his Stall, and there tie his head gently up to the Rack with his Bridle ; which done, presently, as having prepared it before, give the Horse this Scowring following, and made in this manner.

The first Scowring.

TAKE a pint of the best sweet Sack, and put thereto better than an ounce of the clearest and purest Rosin, bruised to a very fine dust, and brew them together exceeding much ; then when the Sack and it is incorporated together, put thereto half a pint of the best Sallad-Oyl, and brew them also well together ; then lastly, take a full ounce and an half of brown Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and put it in also ; then mull also upon the fire, and being luke-warm, and the Horse newly come in from his heat, as before I shewed you, draw his Head up to the Rack, and with an horn give him this Scowring, for it is a strong one, and this taketh away and avoideth all manner of molten grease, and foulness whatsoever.

The Ordering of the Horse after this Scowring.

AS soon as you have given the Horse this Scowring, presently let your Groom fall to rubbing of his Legs, and do yourself take off his Saddle and Cloths, and finding his body dry, run slightly
over

over it with your Curry-comb, after with the Brush : Then dust well, and lastly, rub all his body over exceedingly well with dry cloths, especially his head, nape of the neck, and about his heart ; then cloath him up warm, as at his other ordinary times, and wisp him round with great warm wisps : and if you throw over him a little loose Blanket, it will not be amiss in these extraordinary times, especially if the Season be cold.

Your Horse must fast full two hours after the receipt of his Scowring ; but yet depart not yourself, or your Groom out of the Stable, but stay and keep the Horse stirring and waking, partly by extraordinary noise and clamour, and partly by action about him, or making him move up and down, as he standeth. There is nothing more hurtful to the Horse, or working of the Medicine, than sleep, stitiness and rest, and nothing better or more available to the working of the Medicine than action and motion : for they make the spirits lively, and stir up those humours which should be removed, when rest keeps the spirits dull, and the humours so inclosed and reserved, that nature hath nothing to work upon.

After your Horse hath fasted upon his Bridle two hours, or more, then you shall take a handful of Wheat-ears, being your Pollard, that is, without rough beards, and coming to the Horse, first handle the roots of his ears, then put your hands under his cloths against his heart, upon his Fillets, Flanks, and on the nether part of his Thighs ; and if you find any new sweat to arise, or any coldness of sweat, or if you see his body beat, or his breath move fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it is a pregnant sign that there is much foulness stirred up, on which the Medicine working with a conquer-
ing

ing quality, the Horse is brought to a little heart-sickness. Therefore in this case you shall only take off his Bridle, and put on his Collar; then toss up his Litter that he may lie down, and then absent yourself (having made the Stable dark and still) for two hours more at the least, which is the utmost end of that sickness.

But if you find no such offence, then you shall proffer him the Ears of Wheat by three or four together; and if he eat this handful, then give him another,

After he hath eaten the Wheat-ears, you shall then give him a little bundle of Hay, such as hath been before declared, and draw his Bridle, rubbing his head well.

An hour or better after he hath had his Hay, you shall sift him a quart of the best Oats, and to them you shall put two or three handfuls of spelted Beans, which you shall cause to be ree'd and dressed as clean as possible from all manner of hulls, dust, and filth whatsoever, so as there may be nothing but the clean spelted Beans themselves. To these Oats and Beans you shall break two or three good thick shives of Bread, clean chipt, and give all unto the Horse, and so leave him to his rest for near three hours or thereabouts.

At evening, before you dress your Horse, give him the like quantity of Oats, spelted Beans and bread; and when he hath eaten them, then bridle him up and dress him, as before shewed; after he is drest, cloath him up, for you shall neither saddle him, nor ride him forth: for you shall understand that this Evening after his heat, the horse being inwardly foul, and the Scowring yet working in his body, he may not receive any water at all.

After

After the Horse is drest, and hath stood an hour and half upon his Bridle, you shall then take three points of clean sifted Oats, and wash them in strong Ale or Beer, and so give them to the Horse; for this will inwardly cool and refresh him, as if he had drunk water.

After he hath eaten all his washt meat, and rested upon it a little space, you shall then at his feeding times, which have been spoken of before, with Oats and spelt Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each several and simple of itself (as you shall find the Stomach of the Horse best addicted to receive it) feed him that Night in a plentiful manner, and leave a Knob of Hay in the Rack when you go to your bed.

The next day, very early as may be, first feed, then drest, after cloath, saddle, then air him abroad, and water him, as hath been before shewed; after bring him home, and feed him with Oats, spelt Beans, and Bread, as was last of all declared; only very little Hay, and keep your Heating-days, and the preparation the day before, in such wise as hath been also formerly declared, without any omission or addition. Thus you shall spend the second Fortnight, in which your Horse having received four Heats soundly given unto him, and four Scowrings, there is no doubt but his Body will be inwardly clean; you shall then the third Fortnight order him according to these Rules which hereafter follow :

The Third Fortnight's Keeping.

THE third Fortnight you shall make his Bread finer than it was formerly. *As thus,*

The

The Second Bread.

YOU shall take two pecks of clean Beans, and two pecks of fine Wheat, grind them on the black stones, searce them through a fine Range, and knead it up with Barm, and great store of Lightning, working it in all points, and baking it in the same sort as was shewed you in the former Bread.

With this Bread, having the crust cut clean away, and being old (as was before shewed) with clean sifted Oats, and with clean drest spelt Beans, you shall feed your Horse this Fortnight, as you did in the Fortnight before: you shall observe his dressing, airing, and hours of feeding, as in the former Fortnight; also you shall observe his Heating-days, and the day before his heat, as in the former Fortnight, only with these differences.

First you shall not give his heats so violently as before, but with a little more pleasure; that is to say, if the first heat be of force and violence, the second heat shall be of pleasure and ease, and indeed none at all to overstrain the Horse, or to make his body sore.

Next, you shall not after his heats, when he cometh home, give him any more of the former Scowring, but instead thereof, you shall instantly upon the end of your heat, after the Horse is a little cool'd, and cloathed up, and in the same place where you rub him, by drawing his head up aloft as you sit in the Saddle, or raising it up otherwise, give him a Ball somewhat bigger than a French Wall-nut, hull and all, of that Confection which is mentioned before, of the true manner of making of Cordial-Balls.

The Fourth and Last Fortnight's Keeping.

NOW to return again to my purpose, having thus spent the three first fortnights, you shall the fourth and last Fortnight make your Horse's Bread much finer than either of the former.

The Last Bread.

TAKE three pecks of fine Wheat, and put in one peck of clean Beans; grind them to powder on the black stones, and bould them through the finest Bolter you can get; then knead it up with very sweet Ale-barm, and new strong Ale, and the barm beaten together, and also the Whites of at least twenty Eggs: in anywise no water at all, but instead thereof some small quantity of new Milk. Then work it up, and labour it with all painfulness that may be, as was shewed in the first Bread; then bake it, and order it, as was declared in the other.

With this Bread (having the crust cut clean away, and with Oats well sunned, beaten, and rubbed over with your hands, then new winnowed and sifted, and most finely drest, that there may be neither light ones nor foul ones, nor any false Grain amongst them; and with the purest spelted Beans that can be tryed out) feed your Horse at his ordinary feeding times, in such wise as you did in the Fortnight last mentioned before.

You shall keep his Heating-days, the first week of this last Fortnight, in such wise as you did in the former Fortnight: but the last week you shall forbear one heat, and not give him any heat five days before

before his Match at the least, only you shall give him long and strong Airings to keep him in wind.

You shall not need this Fortnight to give him any Scowring at all.

If this Fortnight, Morning and Evening, you burn upon a Chafing-dish of Coals in your Stable of the purest Olibanum or Frankincense mixt with Storax and Benjamin, to perfume and sweeten the Room, you shall find it exceeding wholesome for the Horse and he will take delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give your Horse, any washt meat, wash it not in Ale or Beer, but in the Whites of Eggs or Muskadine, for that is more wholesome and less purisie.

This Fortnight give your Horse no Hay at all, but what he taketh out of your hand after his heats, and that must be in little quantity, and clean dusted and drest, unless he be an exceeding evil Feeder, and marvellous tender, and a great belly looser.

The last week of this Fortnight, if your Horse be a foul Feeder, you must use the Muzzle continually; but if he be a clean Feeder, and will touch no litter, then three days before your Match is a convenient time for the use of the Muzzle.

The Morning the day before your Match, feed well before and after Airing, and Water, as at other times, before noon; and after noon, scant his proportion of meat a little.

Before and after Evening Airing, feed as at noon, and water as at other times, but be sure to come home before Sun-set.

This day you shall cool the Horse, shoe the Horse, and do all extraordinary things of Ornament about him; Provided there be nothing to give him offence, or to hinder him in feeding, or any other
material

material or beneficial action; for I have heard some Horsemen say, that when they had shod their Horse with light Shoes, and done other actions of ornament about them, the night before the Course, their Horse hath taken such special notice thereof, that they have refused both to eat and lie down. But you must understand that those Horses must be old, and long experienced in this exercise, or they cannot reach at these subtle apprehensions: For my part, touching the nice and strait platting up of Horses Tails in the manner of Sackers or Docks (which is now in general use) howsoever the ornament may appear great to the Eye, yet I do not much affect it, because I know, if an ignorant hand have the workmanship thereof, he may many ways give offence to the Horse, and in avoiding cumberfomness, bread a great deal of more cumber; therefore I wish every one rather to avoid curiosity, which they call necessary Ornament, than by those false graces to do injury to the Horse.

Now for the necessary and indifferent things which are to be done unto the Horse, I would rather have them done the day before, than on the Morning of the Course, because I would have the Horse that morning to find no trouble or vexation.

The next morning, which is the Match-day, come to your Horse before day, take off his Muzzle, rub his head well, and give him a pretty quantity of Oats masht in Muscadine, if he will eat them, or else in the Whites of Eggs; or if he refuse both, then try him with fine drest Oats, dry, and mixt with a little Wheat, or with your lightest Bread: as for Beans, forbear them; of any of these foods give him such a quantity as may keep him in high spirits: then if he be a horse that is an evil emptier,
and

and will retain meat long, you may walk him abroad, and in the places where he used to empty, there entice him to empty; which as soon as he hath done, bring him home, put on his Muzzle, and let him rest, till you have warning to make ready and lead forth: but if he be a good and free emptying Horse, then you need not stir him, but let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to prepare for leading out, then come to your Horse, and having washed his snaffle in a little Muscadine, take off his Muzzle, and bridle him up: But before you bridle, if you think the Horse too empty, you may give him three or four mouthfuls of the washt meat last spoken of, then bridle up, then dress: after having pitcht your Saddle and Girths with Shoemakers Wax, set it on his back, and girt it as gently as may be, so as he may have a feeling, but no straineness. Then lay a very white sheet over the Saddle next his skin, and over it his ordinary clothes, then his Body-cloth and Breast-cloth, and wisp them round about with soft wisps; then if you have a Counterpane, or cloth of State for bravery's sake, let it be fastned above all. When this is done, and you are ready to draw out, then take half a pint of the best Muscadine, and give it him with an Horn, and so lead him away.

In all your leadings upon the Course, of gentle and calm motions, suffer the Horse to smell upon every dung, that thereby he may empty himself; and in special places of advantage, as where you find rushes, long grass, ling, or heath, or the like, walk your Horse, and entice him to piss: but if you find no such help, then in special places upon the Course, and chiefly towards the latter end; and having used the same means before, break some of your

wisps under the Horse's belly, and so make him piss.

And in your leading, if any white or thick foam or froth arise about the Horse's mouth, you shall with a clean handkerchief wipe it away : carrying a small bottle of clear water about you, wash your Horse's mouth now and then therewith.

When you come to the place of starting, before you uncloath the Horse, rub and chafe his Legs with hard wisps ; then pick his feet, and wash his mouth with water, then uncloath him ; mount his Rider, start fair, and then refer all the rest to God's good will and pleasure.

General Observations, Helps and Advertisements, for any man when he goeth about to buy a Horse.

THere is nothing more difficult or intricate in all the Art of Horsemanship than to set down constant and uncontrolable Resolutions, by which to bind every man's mind to an unity of consent in the buying of an Horse : For according to the old Adage, *That which is one man's meat, is another man's poison ;* what one effects, another dislikes. But to proceed according to the Rule of Reason, the precepts of the Ancients, and the modern practice of our present conceived Opinions, I will, as freely as I can, shew you those Observations and Advertisements which may strengthen and fortify you in any hard and difficult Election.

First, therefore, you are to observe, that if you will elect an Horse for your heart's contentment, you are to take to yourself this principal consideration : Namely, the end and purpose for which you Elect him ; as whether for the Wars, for Running, Hunting, Travel, Draught, or Burthen ; every one having
their

their several Characters and their several faces, both of beauty and uncomeliness.

But because there is but one Truth, and one Perfection, I will, under the description of the perfect Horse, that is untainted, shew all the imperfections and attaintures that either nature or mischance can put upon the Horse of greatest deformity.

Let me then advise you that intend to buy a Horse, to acquaint yourself well with all the true shapes and excellencies which belong to an Horse, whether it be in his natural and true proportion, or in any accidental or outward increase or decrease of any Limb or Member; and from their contraries, to gather all things whatsoever that may give dislike or offence.

To begin therefore with the first Principles of Election, you shall understand, that they are divided into two special heads: the one general, the other, particular.

The general Rule of Election, is first the end for which you buy, then his breed or generation, his colour, his face and his stature, and these are said to be general; because the first, which is the end for which you buy, is a thing shut up only in your own Breast.

The other, which is his breed, you must either take it from faithful report, your own knowledge, or from some known and certain Characters, by which one strain or one Country is distinguished from another: As the *Neapolitan* is known by his hoop Nose, the *Spaniard* by his small Limbs, the *Barbary* by his fine Head, the *Dutch* by his rough Legs, the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth of divers others.

As for his colour, although there is no colour ex-

empt utterly from goodness, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed than others, as the Dapple-grey for beauty, the Brown-bay for service, the black Silver-hairs for courage, and the Lyard or true mix'd Roan for countenance : As for the Sorrel, the Black without White, and the unchangeable Iron-grey, they are reputed cholerick ; the Bright-bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black with white marks, are Sanguinists ; the Blank-white, the Yellow-dun, the Kite-glew'd, and the Py-bald, are Flegmatick ; and the Chesnut, the Mouse-dun, the Red-bay and the Blue-grey, are melancholy.

Now for his Pace, which is either Trot, Amble, Rack or Gallop, you must refer it to the end also for which you buy ; as if he be for the Wars, Hunting, Running, or your own private disposition, then the Trot is most tolerable. And this motion you shall know by a cross moving of the Horse's Limbs, as when the far fore leg and the near hinder leg, or the near fore leg and the far hinder leg move and go forward in one instant. And in this motion, the neater the Horse taketh his Limbs from the Ground, the opener, the evener, and the shorter he treadeth, the better his pace ; for to take up his feet sturnly, shews stumbling and lameness ; to tread narrow or cross, shews interfering or falling ; to step uneven, shews toil and weariness ; to tread long, shews over-reaching.

Now if you elect for Ease, great person's seats, or long travel, then an Amble is required ; and this motion is contrary to a trot ; for now both the feet on one Side must move equally together ; that is, his far fore leg, and the far hinder leg : and this motion must go just, large, smooth and nimble : for to tread
false

false takes away all ease, to tread short, rides no ground; to tread rough, shews rolling; and to tread nimbly, shews a false pace that never continueth, as also lameness.

If you elect for Buck-hunting, for galloping on the High-way, for Post, Hackney, or the like, then a racking pace is required: and this motion is the same that Ambling is, only it is in a swifter time and shorter tread; and though it rid not so much ground, yet it is a little more easy.

Now to all these parts must be joined a gallop (which naturally every Trotting and Racking Horse hath) the Ambler is a little unapt thereunto, because the motions are both one, so that being put to a greater swiftnes of pace than naturally he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his legs confusedly and out of order; but being tamed gently, and made to know and understand the motion, he will as well undertake it as any Trotting Horse whatsoever. Now in a good Gallop, you are to observe these vertues:

First, That the Horse which taketh his feet nimbly from the ground, but doth not raise them high, that neither rolleth, nor beats himself, that stretcheth out his fore Legs, follows nimbly with his hinder, and neither cutteth under the Knee (which we call the swift cut) nor crosseth, nor claps one foot upon another, and ever leadeth with his far fore foot, and not with the near;

This Horse is said ever to gallop most comely, and most true, and is the fittest for speed, or any other like employment.

If he gallop round, and raise his fore-feet, he is then said to gallop strongly, but not swiftly, and is fittest for the great Saddle, the Wars, and strong encounters.

If he gallop slow, yet sure, he will serve for the high-way; but if he labour his feet confusedly, and gallop painfully, then he is good for no galloping service; besides, it shews some obscure lameness.

Lastly, Touching his stature, it must be referred to your own judgment, and the end for which you buy him; ever observing, that the biggest and strongest are fittest for strong occasions, as great burthens, strong draughts, and double carriage; the middle size for pleasure, and general employments; and the least for ease, street-walks, and Summer-hackney.

Now touching the particular Rule of election, it is contained in the Discovery of natural deformities, accidental, outward or inward hidden mischiefs, which are so many, yea infinite, that it is a world of work to explain them; yet for satisfaction's sake, I will, in as methodical a manner as I can, briefly, and according to the best conceited Opinions, shewn or that can be observed in this occasion.

First, therefore, When an Horse is brought unto you to buy, being satisfied of his breed, his pace and colour, then see him stand naked before you, and placing yourself before his face, take a strict view of his countenance, and the chearfulness thereof, for it is an excellent Glass wherein to see his goodness; *As thus*, If his Ears be small, thin, sharp, pricked, and moving, and if they be long, yet well set on, and well carried, it is a mark of beauty, goodness, and mettle; but if they be thick, laved, or lolling, wide set on, and unmoving, then are they signs of dullness, doggedness, and ill nature.

If his face be clean, his forehead swelling outward, the mark or feather in his face set high, as above his eyes, or at the top of his eyes; if he has a white

white star, or a white rach of an indifferent size, and even placed, or a white snip on his nose, all are marks of beauty and goodness: but if his face be fat, cloudy or scouling, his fore-head flat as a trencher, which we call mare-faced, the mark in his fore-head stand low, as under his eyes; if his star or rach stand awry or in an evil posture, or instead of a snip, his nose be raw and unhairy, or his face generally bald, all are signs of deformity: if his eyes be round, bright, black, shining, staring, or starting from his head; if the black of the Eye fill the pit, or outward circumference, so that in the moving none (or very little) of the white appeareth; all are signs of beauty, goodness and metal; but if his Eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion; if they be little (which we call Pig-eyed) are uncomely, and signs of weakness: if they be red and fiery, take heed of moon-eyes, which is the next door to blindness; if white and walled, it shews a weak sight, and unnecessary starting or finding of boggards; if with white specks, take heed of the pearl, pin and web; if they water or show bloody, it shews bruises; and if they matter, they shew old over-riding and festered Rhums, or violent strains; if they look dead or dull, or all hollow and much sunk, take heed of blindness; at the best the Beast is of an old decrepid Generation; if the black fill not the pit, but the white is always appearing, or if in moving the white, the black be seen in equal quantity, it is a sign of weakness and dogged disposition.

If handling of his Cheeks or Chaps, you find the bones lean and thin, the space wide between them, the thropple or wind-pipe big as you can grip, and the void place without knots or kernels; and generally, the jaws so open, that the neck seemeth to

couch within them, they are all excellent Signs of great Wind, Courage and Soundness of head and body; but if the Chaps be fat and thick, the space between them closed up with gross substance, and the thropple little, all are signs of short wind, and much inward foulness; if the void Place be full of knots and kernels, take heed of the strangle or glanders, at least the Horse is not without a foul Cold.

If his Jaws be so strait, that his neck swelleth about them; if it be no more but natural, it is only an uncomely Sign of strait wind and pursiness, or grossness: but if the swelling be long and close to his Chops like a whet-stone, then take heed of the Uvies, or some other unnatural imposthume.

If his nostrils be open, dry, wide and large, so as upon any straining the very inward redness is discovered; and if his Muzzle be small, his Mouth deep, and his Lips equally meeting, they are all good signs of Wind, Heat and Courage; but if his nostrils be strait, his wind is little; if his muzzle be gross, his spirit is dull; if his mouth be shallow, he will never carry a bit well; and if his upper lip will not reach his nether, old age or infirmity hath marked him for Carrion; and if his Nose be moist and dropping, if it be clear Water, it is a Cold; if foul Matter, then beware of the Glanders; if both Nostrils run, it is hurtful; but if one, then dangerous.

Touching his Teeth, and their Virtues, they are at large set down in another Chapter touching the Horse's Age: Only remember you never buy an Horse that wanteth any, for as bad lose all as one.

From his Head look down to his Breast, and look that it be broad, out-setting, and adorned with many Feathers, for that shews Strength and Endurance: the little Breast is uncomely, and shews Weakness; the

the narrow Breast is apt to stumble, fall, and interfere before; and the Breast that is hidden inward, and wanteth the Beauty and Division of many Feathers, shews a weak armed Heart, and a Breast that is unwilling and unfit for any Toil or strong Labour.

Next look down from his Elbow to his Knee, and see that those Fore-thighs be rush grown, well horned within, sinewy flesh, and without Swelling, for they are good Signs of Strength; the contrary shews Weakness, and are unnatural.

Then look on his Knees, that they carry an equal and even Proportion, be clean, sinewy, and close knit, for they are good and comely; if one be bigger and rounder than another, the Horse hath received Mischief; if they be gross, the Horse is gouty; or if they have Scars, or Hair-broken, it is a true Mark of a stumbling Jade, and a perpetual Faller.

From his Knees look down his Legs to his Pasterns, and if you find his Legs clean, fat and sinewy, and the inward bought of his Knee without a Seam, or hair-broken, then he shews good Shape and Soundness; but if on the inside there are Excretions, if under his Knee be Scabs on the inside, it is the Swift-cut, and he will ill endure galloping; if above his Pasterns on the inside you find Scabs, it shews interfering. But if the Scabs be generally over his Legs, it is either extreme foul Keeping, or a Spice of the Mange; if his Legs be fat, round and fleshy, he will never endure Labour; if in the inward bought of his Knee you find Seams, Scabs, or hair-broken, it shews a Malander, which is a cankerous Ulcer.

Look then on his Pasterns, the first must be clean and well knit together, the other must be short, strong and upright standing; for if the first be big or
swell'd,

swell'd, take heed of the sinew-strains and gurding; if the other be long, weak, or bending, the limbs will hardly carry the body without tiring.

For the hoofs in general, they would be black, smooth, tough, rather a little long than round and hollow, and full sounding; for a white hoof is tender, and carries a shoe ill; a rough, gross, seam'd hoof shews old age or over-heating: brittle hoofs will carry no shoe; an extraordinary round hoof is ill for foul ways or deep hunting: a flat hoof that is pummiced shews foundering; and an hoof that is empty and hollow sounding, shews a decayed inward part, by reason of some wound or dry founder. As for the Crownet of the hoof, if the hair be smooth and close, and the flesh fat and even, all is perfect; but if the hair be staring, the skin scabbed, the flesh rising, then look for a ring-bone, a Crown-scab, or like mischief.

After this, stand by his side, and first look to the setting on of his head, and see that it stand neither too high nor too low, but in a direct line; and that his neck be small at the setting on, and long, growing deeper and deeper till it come to the shoulders, with an high, strong, and thin Crest; and his Mane thin, long, soft, and somewhat curling, for these are beautiful Characters; whereas to have the head ill set on, is the greatest deformity; to have any bigness or swelling in the nape of the neck, shews the pole-evil, or beginning of a Fistula: to have a short thick neck like a Bull, to have it falling at the withers, to have a low, a weak, a thick or falling Crest, shews want both of strength and mettle; and to have much hair on the Mane, shews intolerable dulness, to have it too thin shews fury, and to have none, or to shed, shews the worm in the Mane, the itch, or else mange.

Look

Look then to the chine of his back, that it be broad, even and straight, his ribs well compassed, and bending outward, his fillets upright, strong and short, and not above four fingers between his last rib and his knuckle-bone : let his Body be well let down, yet hidden without his Ribs, and let his Stones be close thrust up to his Body, for all these are marks of good perfection. Whereas to have his chine narrow, he will never carry a Saddle without wounding ; and to have it bending or Saddle-backt, shews weakness ; to have his Ribs fat, there is no liberty for wind, to have his fillets hanging long or weak, he will never climb an hill well, nor carry burthen ; and to have his Belly clung up and gant, or his Stones hanging down close or aside, they are both signs of sickness, tenderness, or foundering in the Body, and unaptness for labour. Then look upon his buttock, and see that it be round, full, plump, and in an even level with his body ; or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread forth at the setting on of the Tail, for these are comely and beautiful : the narrow pin-buttock, the Hog or Swine-rump, and the falling or downlet-buttock, are full of deformity, and shew both an injury in nature, and that they are neither fit nor becoming for Pad, Foot-cloth, or Pillow.

Then look to his hinder thighs, or gascoins, that they be well let down, even to the middle joint, thick, brawny, full and swelling, for that is a great argument of strength and goodness ; whereas the lean, lank, slender thigh, shews disability and weakness. Then look upon the middle joint behind, and see if it be nothing but skin and bone, veins and sinews, and rather a little bending than too strait, then it is perfect as it should be ; but if it hath
chaps

chaps or sores in the inward bought or bending, then it is a Sellander.

If the joynt be swell'd generally all over, then he hath gotten a blow or bruise; if the swelling be particular, as in the plot or hollow part, or on the inside, and the vein full and proud; if the swelling be short, it is a blood-spaven; if hard, it is a bone-spaven; but if the swelling be just behind, below the knuckle, then it is a curb.

Then look to his hinder Legs, and if they be clean, fat, and sinewy, then all is well, but if they be fat, they will not endure labour; if they be swell'd, the grease is molten into them; if they be scabbed above the Pasterns, he hath the Scratches; if he has chaps under his Pasterns, he hath the Pains, and none of these but are dangerous and no some.

Lastly, For the setting on of his Tail, where there is a good Buttock, there the Tail can never stand ill, and where there is an ill Buttock, there the Tail can never stand well, for it ought to stand broad, high, flat, and a little touched inward.

Thus I have shewed you true shapes, and true deformities; you may in your choice please your own fancy.

Certain Infallible Helps and Cures for those Infirmities which are most dangerous, and do commonly attend all Horses; especially the Running Horse.

First, of Sicknefs in gencral.

WHensoever upon any occasion you shall find your Horse to droop in Countenance, to forsake his meat, or to shew any apparent sign of sickness; if they be not great, you may forbear to let blood, because where blood is spent, the spirits are spent also, and they are not easily recovered; but if the signs be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood instantly; and for three Mornings together, the Horse being fasting, give him half an ounce of the Powder called *Diabexaple*, brewed either in a pint of the purest and finest Syrup of Sugar, being two degrees above the ordinary Molosses, or for want thereof Molosses will serve the turn, or where all are wanting, you may take a pint either of Cardus water, or else Dragon water, or a quart of sweetest and strongest Alewort; and this must be given him in a Horn, and if the Horse have ability of body, ride him in some warm place after it, and let him fast near two hours more. At noon give him a sweet Mash, cloath warm, and let him touch no cold water.

Now for the exact and true making of this Powder, which I call *Diabexaple*, because no man, that I know, either Apothecaries or others, doth at this day make it truly, partly because it is an experiment lately come to my knowledge by conference with learned Physicians, and partly because our Medicine-makers
are

are in Horſe-Phyſick leſs curious than they ſhould be; through which errors there is produced to the world abundance of falſe mixtures; which both deceive the honeſt Horſe-maſter, kill the harmleſs Horſe, and diſgrace the well-meaning Farrier.

To repair all which, I will here ſet down at large the true manner of making this admirable Powder, together with the Vertues and Operations thereof.

Take of the grains of Paradice, of Ivory and Myrrh, of the roots of Enula Campana, of Turmerick and Gentian, of each alike quantity; then beat and ſearſe them into a ſubtile Powder, and give the Horſe ſuch a quantity, as is before directed. This reſiſteth the putrefaction of humours, comforts and ſtrengthens the inward parts, opens obſtuctions, helps the Lungs, and if taken in time, not only recovers the Horſe, but preventeth many other diſtempers.

Certain neceſſary Obſervations and Advantages for every Keeper to obſerve in ſundry accidents.

THERE is no unreaſonable creature of pleaſure ſubject to ſo many diſaſtrous chances of Fortune as the Horſe, and eſpecially the Running Horſe, both by reaſon of the multiplicity of Diſeaſes belonging unto them, as alſo the violence of their exerciſe, and the nice tenderneſs of their Keeping. And therefore it behoveth every Keeper to be armed with ſuch Obſervations as may diſcern miſchiefs, and thoſe helps which may amend them, when they happen.

Obſer-

Observations for sickness and health.

THE first Observation therefore that I would arm your Keeper withal, is to discern sickness from health. *As thus.*

If you find in your Horse heaviness of countenance, extreme looseness, or extreme costiveness, shortness of breath, loathing of meats, dull and imperfect Eyes, rotten or dry cough, staring hair, or hair unnaturally discover'd, staggering pace, frantick behaviour, yellowness of the eyes and skin, faint or cold sweat, extraordinary lying down or beating, or looking back at his body, alteration of qualities and gestures, no casting his coat, leanness, hide-bound, and the like; all these are apparent signs of distemperature or sickness.

Observations from the Dung.

IT is necessary that our Keeper observe the Horse's Dung, for it is the best tell-truth of an Horse's inward parts; yet he must not judge it by a general opinion, but a private discourse with himself, how the Horse hath been fed, because food is the only thing.

As thus:

If the Dung be clear, crisp, and of a pale and whitish yellow complexion, hanging together without separation, more than as the weight breaks it in the falling, being neither so thin that it will run, nor so thick but it will a little flatten on the ground, and indeed both in savour and substance somewhat resembling a sound man's ordure; Then is the Horse clean,

clean, well fed, and without Imperfection ; if it be well coloured, yet fall from him in round Knots or Pellets ; but if all his Dung be alike, then it is a Sign of foul Feeding, and he hath either too much Hay, or eats too much Litter, and too little Corn.

If his Dung be in round Pellets, and blackish, or brown, it shews inward Heat in the Body ; if it be greafe, it shews Foulness, and that greafe is molten but cannot come away ; if he doth avoid Grease in gross Substance with his Dung, if the Grease be white and clear, then it comes away kindly, and there is no Danger ; but if it be yellow and putrified, then the Grease hath lain long in his Body, and Sickness may follow if not prevented : If his Dung be red and hard, then the Horse hath had too strong Heats, and Costiveness will follow ; if it be pale and loose, it shews inward Coldness of Body, or too much moist Feeding.

Observations from the Urine.

AS the Keeper hath thus a principal Respect to the Horse's Dung, so he shall take some Notes from the Urine also : And though they be not altogether so material as the other, because, according to the Opinion of Physicians, *Urina est Meretrrix*, Urine is a Deceiver, yet it hath some true Faces. *As thus* ; The Urine which is of a pale yellowish Colour, rather thick than thin, of a strong smell, and a piercing Condition, is an healthful, sound and good Urine ; but if you find any Note or Complexion contrary to these, then in the Horse is some imperfection. *As thus* ; If the Urine be of an high and ruddy Complexion, either like Blood, or inclining to Blood, then hath the Horse either had too
fore

fore heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter-Grafs; if the Urine be of an high complexion, clear and transparent, like old March-Beer, then the Horse is inflamed in his Body, and hath taken some surfeit.

If the Urine carry a white Cream on the top, it shews a weak Back, and a Consumption of Seed.

A green Urine shews a Consumption of the Body.

An Urine with bloody streaks shew an Ulcer in the Kidneys; and a black thick cloudy Urine shews Death and Mortality.

Observations in Feeding.

A Gain, Our Keeper must observe, that if there be any meat, drink, or other nourishment which he knoweth good for the Horse, if the Horse refuse to take it. in this case he shall not violently thrust it upon the Horse, or by force cram him therewith; but by gentle degrees and cunning inticements, and by process of time win him thereunto; tempting him when he is most hungry or most thirsty; and if he get but a bit at a time, or a sup at a time, it will soon encrease to a greater quantity, and ever let him have less than he desireth. And that he may the sooner be brought to it, mix the meat he loveth best with that he loveth worst; the drink he loveth the best, with that he loveth the worst, till both be made alike familiar, and so shall the Horse be a stranger to nothing that is good or wholesome.

Observations in case of Lameness.

A Gain, Our Keeper must observe, if his Horse be subject to Lameness, or stiffness of joints

D

or

or sinews, surbayting or tenderness of feet, first to give him his Heats upon soft and smooth carpet Earth, and to forbear stony ground, hard high-ways, cross Furrows, till extremity compel him.

Observations from the estate of the Horse's Body.

IT is good for the Keeper to observe, that the strongest estate of Body (which I account the highest and fullest of flesh, so it be good, hard, and without inward foulness) to be the best and ablest for the performance of Wagers: yet he must herein take to himself two considerations; the one, the shape of the Horse's Body; the other, his inclination and manner of feeding.

For the shape of Horses Bodies, there be some Horses that be round, plump, and close knit together; so that they will appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and in poverty; others are raw-boned, slender and loose knit together, and will appear lean, deformed, and in poverty when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise their inclinations; some Horses (as the first before-named) will feed outwardly, and will carry a thick Rib, when they are inwardly as clean as may be, and without all manner of foulness.

There be others (as the latter) that will appear clean to the eyes, and shew nothing but skin and bone, when they are full of inward fatness, and have guts as full as may be. In this case the Keeper hath two helps to advantage his knowledge, the one outward, the other inward.

The outward help is the outward handling and feeling of the Horse's body, generally over all his Ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindmost Ribs:

Ribs: If his flesh generally handle soft and loose, and your fingers sink into it as into down; then is the Horse foul without question: but if generally it be hard and firm, only upon the hindmost Rib it handleth soft and downy, then it is a pregnant sign there is grease and foul matter within the Horse, which must be avoided, how lean or poor soever he appear in outward speculation.

The inward help is only sharp exercise and strong scowrings: the first will dissolve and melt the foulness, the latter will bring it away in abundance.

If your Horse be fat and thick, and as it were closed up between the Chaps, or if his Jaws handle fleshy and full, it is a sign of much foulness both in the Head and Body; but if he handle thin, clean and only with some lumps or small Kernels within his Chaps, then it is only a sign of some cold or poze newly taken.

Observations from the privy Parts.

IT is good for our Keeper to observe his Horse's stones, if he be stoned: for if they hang down side or long from his Body, then is the Horse out of lust and heart, and is either sick of grease or other foul humours; but if they be close couched up, and lie hid in a very small room, then is the Horse in health and good plight.

Observations from the Limbs.

IT is good for our Keeper to observe every night, before he runs either Match or Heat, to bathe his Horse's Legs well, from above the Knees, and above the Cambrels downwards, with either Dog's
D 2 grease

grease, which is the best, or Trotters Oyl, which is the second, or the purest clarified Hog's grease that can be got, which is most tolerable; and to work it in with his hands, and not with melting at the fire; and what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next Morning; and what he gets not in the next Morning, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end of the course; so that you shall need to use Ointment but once, but the Fricase or Rubbing, as often as you find Opportunity.

Observations for the giving of Water.

OUR Keeper shall observe, that albeit I give no directions for the watering of his Horse in the Evening after his heat, yet he may in any of the three latter Fortnights (finding his Horse clean, and his grease consumed or gone away) somewhat late at Night, as about six of the Clock, give his Horse water in reasonable quantity, being made Milk-warm, and fasting an hour after it.

Also, if the Weather be unseasonable, then you shall at your watering hours water in the house with warm water, putting a little quantity of hot water into a greater of cold, and so make it Milk-warm; in which throw a handful of Wheat-meal, Bran, or Oat-meal finely pounded, but Oat-meal is the best.

Observations in the choice of Ground to run on.

OUR Keeper shall observe, that if the ground whereon he is to run his Match be dangerous, and apt for strains, slips, over-reaches, and the like, that then he is not to give all his heats thereon; but having made his Horse acquainted with the nature there-

thereof, then either to take part of the course, as a mile, two or three, according to the goodness of the ground; and so to run his Horse forth and back again, which we call turning heats: Provided always, that he end his heat at the Weighing-Post, and that he make not his course less, but rather more in quantity than that he must run; but if, for some special occasions, he likes not part of the Course, then he may many times (but not ever) give his heats upon any other good ground, either forth-right and turning, or round about any spacious and large Field, where the Horse may lay down his Body, and run at pleasure.

Observations from sweating.

OUR Keeper shall take special regard in all his airing, heating, and all manner of Exercise and Motion whatsoever, to the sweating of his Horse, and to the occasions of his sweating; as if an Horse sweat upon little or no occasion, as walking, foot-pace, standing still in the stable, or the like, it is then apparent that the Horse is faint, foul fed, and wanteth exercise; but if upon good occasion, as strong heats, and the like, he sweat, if his sweat is white, frothy, and like soap-suds, then is the Horse inwardly foul, and wanteth also exercise; but if the sweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, then is the Horse in good lust and good case.

Observations from the Horse's Hair.

OUR Keeper shall observe well his Horse's Hair in general, but especially his Neck and those parts which are uncovered; and if they be sleek,
D 3 smooth

smooth, and close, then is the Horse in good case; but if they be rough and staring, or any way unnaturally discoloured; then is the Horse inwardly cold at the heart, and wanteth Cloaths and warm keeping, or else there is some sickness creeping upon him.

Many other Observations there be; but these are most material, and I hope sufficient for any reasonable understanding.

Cure for the Shivers

Take 1 oz of Camphor

2 oz of spirits of wine

1 oz Oil of Spike

1 oz of Barley dross Tar

1 1/2 oz of Turpentine

*Mix them together and rub
the horse right well*

morning & Evening

MATTHEW HODSON'S

MEDICINES.

A Medicine for the Glanders.

TAKE a quart of red Vinegar, being no Wine vinegar; put it over the fire, and put thereto two spoonfuls of English Honey, two spoonfuls of Elecampane, beaten into fine Powder, and searfe it through a fine Searfer; and as much Roch-Allom as the bigness of an Egg, beaten into fine Powder; half a pint of Sallad Oyl: put in your Sallad Oyl after all these have boiled together one quarter of an hour, then take it off the fire, and let it stand until it be Milk-warm, then give your Horse six spoonfuls in each Nostril with a little horn: after you have given this drink, ride him two or three turns and no more; then tye his head down to his foot for the space of four hours; then let him fast four hours; you must give this drink at nine several times, being three days betwixt every drink; every second day after he hath had his drink, give him Chickens Guts warm, rolled in beaten Bay Salt, and put them down his Throat, giving him warm water and wet Hay all the time you give him this drink, and this will amend the Glanders, and the Mourning in the Chine. *Probatum est.*

A Medicine for any Cold that is not the Glanders.

TAKE two spoonfuls of Pepper well beaten, two spoonfuls of Mustard, four spoonfuls of Salad Oyl, four roasted Onions roasted very soft, and cut them very small; then take two spoonfuls of Elecampane made into fine powder: mingle all these together, and make them into Balls with fresh Butter, and give your Horse three Balls at a time. Nine Balls given at three times will cure him, so you travel him upon it.

For a Strain in the Shoulder.

TAKE two ounces of Oyl of Pompilion, and two ounces of Oyl of Spike, two ounces of Linseed-oil; rub these Oyls well together upon his shoulder, and warm it in with an hot Iron: then let him be blooded in the shoulder, and hopple his fore-feet together, and this will cure him.

A cure for a Sinew-Sprung-Horse.

TAKE a pint of Linseed-Oyl, and boyl it; then put in three penny-worth of *Aqua vitæ*, and stir them together, then anoint your Horse's leg with it, and this will cure him.

The true manner of making those Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, which prevent heavy sickness, which purge away all molten Grease, which recover a loose Stomach, which keep the heart from fainting with exercise, and make a lean Horse fat suddenly.

TAKE of Anni-feed, of Cummin-seeds, of Fenu-greek-seeds, of the fine searfed powder of Elecampane roots, of each two ounces, beaten and searfed to a very fine dust; then add to them two ounces of brown Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and two ounces of the flour of Brimstone; then take an ounce of the best juice of Liquorish, and dissolve it on the fire in half a pint of White-wine: which done, take an ounce of the best Chymical Oyl of Anni-seeds, and three ounces of the Syrup of Colts-foot; then of Sallad-Oyl, of fine live Honey, and the purest Syrup of Sugar or Molosses, of each half a pint; then mix all these with the former powders: and with as much fine Wheat-flour as will bind and knit them all together; work them into a stiff paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger than French Wall-nuts, hulls and all; and so keep them in a close Gally-pot, for they will last all the year: yet I do not mean that you should keep them in the Pot in Balls, for because they cannot lie close, the Air may get in and do hurt, as also the strength of the Oyls will sweat outward, and weaken the substance; therefore knead the whole lump of paste into the Gally-pot, and make the Balls as you have occasion to use them.

Now for the use of these Balls, because they are Cordial, and have divers excellent Vertues, you shall under-

understand, that if you use them to prevent sickness, then you shall take one of these Balls and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it to the Horse in the Morning, in the Manner of a Pill; then ride him a little after, if you please, otherwise you may chuse, and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual custom: and this do three or four Mornings.

If you use them to cure either Cold or Glanders, then use them in the same manner for a week together.

If you use them to fatten an Horse, then give them for a Fortnight together.

But if you use them in the nature of scowring, to take away molten grease or foulness, then instantly after his heat and in his heat you must use them.

Again if you find your Horse at any time hath taken a little cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling; if then you take one of these Balls, and dissolve it in half a pint of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a horn, it is a present remedy.

Also to dissolve the Ball in his ordinary water being made Milk-warm, it worketh the like effect, and fatneth exceedingly.

To give one of these Balls before travel, it prevents tiring; to give it in the height of travel, it refresheth weariness; and to give it after travel, it saves an Horse from Surfeits and inward sickness.

An approved Cure for the Botts, and all manner of Worms, of what nature soever.

TAKE a quart of new Milk, and as much of the purest clarified Honey as will make it extraordinary sweet; then being luke-warm, give it to the Horse

Horſe very early in the Morning, he having faſted all the night before; which done, bridle him up, and let him ſtand tyed to the empty Rack for more than two hours.

Then take half a pint of White-wine, and diſſolve into it a good ſpoonful or more of black Soap, and being well incorporated together (the Horſe having ſtood two hours as aforeſaid) give it him to drink, and let him ſtand other two hours more after it, and the Worms will avoid in great abundance.

Another moſt excellent Receipt for the Botts or any Worm, which is the moſt eaſy and moſt certain, without ſickneſs.

TAKE the ſoft downy hairs which grow in the Ears of an Horſe, and which you clip away when you poll him, and the little ſhort tuft which grows on the top of his fore-head, underneath his foretop, and a pretty quantity of them, mix them well with a pottle of ſweet Oats, and ſo give them to the Horſe to eat, and there is not any thing that will kill worms more aſſuredly.

An uncontroulable way how to know the Age of any Horſe.

THERE are ſeven outward characters by which to know the age of any Horſe; as namely his Teeth, his Hoofs, his Tail, his Eyes, his Skin, his Hair, and the Barrs of his Mouth.

Fiſt.

If you will know his Age by his Teeth, you muſt underſtand that a Horſe hath in his head juſt forty Teeth; that is to ſay, ſix great wang Teeth above, and

and six below on one side, and as many on the other, which makes twenty-four, and are called his Grinders. Then six above and six below in the forepart of his Mouth, which are called Gatherers, and make thirty-six. Then four Tusshes, one above and one below on one side, and one above and one below on the other side, which is just forty.

Now, the first year he hath his Foal's Teeth, which are only Grinders and Gatherers, but no Tusshes; and they be small, white, and bright to look upon.

The second year he changeth the four foremost Teeth in his Head, and they will appear browner and bigger than the others.

At three years old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent Foal's Teeth before, but two of each side above, and two below, which are also bright and small.

At four year old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more Foal's Teeth, but one on each side, both above and below.

At five year old his foremost Teeth will be all changed; but then he hath his Tusshes on each side compleat, and the last Foal's Teeth which he cast, those which come in their place will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the midst, which is called the mark in the Horse's mouth, and continueth till he be eight years old.

At six years old, he putteth up his new Tusshes, near about which you shall see most apparently growing a little Circle of new and young flesh at the bottom of the Tush; besides, the Tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

At seven years old, all his Teeth will have their perfect growth, and the Mark in the Horse's mouth before spoken of will be plainly seen.

At

At eight years old all his Teeth will be full, ſmooth and plain, the black Speck or Mark being hardly to be diſcerned, and his Tuſhes will be more yellow than ordinary.

At nine Years his foremoſt Teeth will ſhew longer, yellower and fouler than at younger Years, and his Tuſhes will be bluntish.

At ten years old, in the inſide of his upper Tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers and, which till that age, you ſhall ever moſt perfectly feel; beſides the Temples of his head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

At eleven years of age, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul; only he will cut even, and his teeth will ſtand directly oppoſite one againſt another.

At twelve years old, his teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper Teeth will over-reach and hang over his nether Teeth.

At Thirteen years old, his Tuſhes will be worn ſomewhat cloſe to his Chaps, (if he be a much ridden Horſe) otherwiſe they will be black, foul, and long, like the Tuſhes of a Bear.

Second.

If an Horſe's Hoofs be rugged, and as it were ſeamed, one ſeam over another, and many, if they be dry, foul, and ruſty, it is a ſign of very old age; as on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow, and well ſounding hoof, is a ſign of young years.

Third.

If you take your Horſe with your Finger and your
Thumb

Thumb, by the ſtern of the Tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by his Buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your Finger and your Thumb of each ſide his Tail, a joint ſtick out more than any other joint, of the bigneſs of an Haſel-nut, then you may preſume the Horſe is under ten years old; but if his joints be all plain, and no ſuch thing be felt, then he is above ten, and may be fifteen.

Fourth.

If an Horſe's eyes be round, full, and ſtaring from his head; if the pits over his eyes be filled ſmooth, and even with his Temples, and no wrinkles either about his brow, or under his Eyes, then the Horſe is young; If otherwiſe you ſee the contrary, it is a ſign of old Age.

Fifth.

If you take up a Horſe's ſkin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from his fleſh, then letting it go again, if it ſuddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horſe is young and full of ſtrength; but if being pulled up, it ſtand, and not return to its former place, then he is very old and waſted.

Sixth.

If an Horſe that is of any dark colour ſhall grow griffel only above his Eye-brows, or underneath his main, or any Horſe of a whitish colour ſhall grow meanelled with either black or red meanels univerſally

niverſally over his body, then Both are infallible ſigns of extream old Age.

Seventh.

If the Bars in his mouth be great, deep, and handle rough and hard, then is the Horſe very old; but if they be ſoft, ſhallow, and handle gently and tenderly, then is the Horſe young, and in luſt:

And thus much of the Age of an Horſe.

An Excellent Purgation, when any Horſe is ſick of his Greafe, or any Coſtivenesſs.

TAKE a pint of good old White-wine, and ſet it on the fire, then diſſolve into it a lump, half as much as an Hen's Egg, of Caſtile-Soap; and ſtrain them well together on the fire: then take it off, and put into it two good ſpoonfuls of Hempſeed, beaten into fine duſt, and an ounce and an half of the beſt Sugarcandy beaten to fine powder, and brew all well together. Then having warmed the Horſe, to ſtir up the Greafe and other foul humours, give him this to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the potion work; then ſet him up warm, and after a little ſtirring him up and down in the Stall, if he grow ſickiſh, give Liberty to lie down. After two or three hours faſting, give him a ſweet Maſh, then feed as at other times.

For Laxativenes, or extream Looseness.

TAKE a quart of red Wine, and set it on the fire; then put into it an ounce and half of Bolearmony made in fine powder, and two ounces and an half of the Conserves of Sloes; then stir and mix them well together; after take it from the fire, and put to it a spoonful or two of the powder of Cinnamon: And brewing all well together, give it the Horse.

Let him fast two hours after it, and let him eat no wash'd meat.

Hay is wholesome, so is Bread and Oats, if they be well mixt with Beans or Wheat, but not otherwise.

An infallible help for the Stone, or pain of Urine, causing Sicknes.

MAKE a strong Decoction (that is to say) boyl your first quantity of Water to an half pint three times over, with keen Onions clean peeled, and Parsley; Then take a quart thereof, and put to it a great spoonful of London Treacle, and as much of the powder of Egg-shells finely searsed, and give it the Horse to drink: And thus do divers Mornings if the infirmity be great; otherwise, when you see the Horse offended.

An approved Medicine to cure and break any old grievous festered and rotten cold, and to dry up a foul Running Glanders.

TAKE a pint of the best Verjuice, and put to so much strong Mustard, made with Wine-vinegar, as will make the Verjuice strong and keen thereof; Then take an ounce or more of Roch-Allum, and beat it into fine white Powder; then when you give this to the Horse, so with a knife or spoon, put some of the Allum into the Horn, and so give it the Horse, part at his mouth, and part at both his nostrils, but especially that nostril which runneth most: Then ride and chafe him a little after it, then set him up warm. At noon, give him a warm Mash, and at all times give him no cold water, but when the Horse may have exercise after it. And thus drench the Horse three days together, and it will be sufficient.

Another for a violent Cold.

TAKE of Wine-Vineger half a pint, and as much Sallad-Oyl, brew them well together, and then put to it an ounce and half of Sugercandy in fine Powder, and so give it the Horse, and stir him a little after. This is exceeding good, but it will occasion sickness for a small season.

An excellent Scowring, when other Scowrings will not work.

TAKE of sweet Butter a quarter of a pound, half so much Casteel-Soap; beat them well together, then add to them two spoonfuls of

E

Hemp-

Hemp-feed, bruised; of anniseed a spoonful, bruised; of Sugarcandy an ounce; of Rosin finely bruised half a spoonful: work all these into a paste, and give it the Horse in the manner of Pills immediately after his heat, or when you have warmed him, and stirred up the grease and foulness within him.

An admirable Water for any sore Eye, or to clear any dim sight, as the Moon-Eyes, and the like.

TAKE the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, and heat it red-hot in the fire; then quench it in half a pint of White-wine, and thus do twelve times together. Then add unto it half so much of the juice of Housleek, and with this bathe the Eye twice or thrice a day, and it is excellent against any imperfection therein.

Another Water, no less precious for the Eyes than the former.

TAKE a pint of Snow-water, and dissolve it into three or four drams of white Vitriol, and with this water wash the Horse's Eyes three or four times, and the effect is great and strange.

The Master-medicine of all Medicines for a Back Sinew-strain, or any grief, pain, straightness, shrinking, or numness of joints or sinews.

TAKE a fat sucking Mastive whelp, slay it, and bowel it, then stop the Body as full as it can hold with grey Snails, and black Snails; then roast it at a reasonable fire; when it begins to warm, baste it with six ounces of the oyl of spike, made yellow with

with Saffron, and six ounces of the Oyl of Wax; Then save the drippings, and what moisture soever falls from it, whilst any drop will fall from the Whelp, and keep it in a Gally-pot.

With this ointment anoint the strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot bar of Iron before it; And thus do both Morning and Evening, till the Cure be finished.

St. Antayne his only Excellent Medicine, for any strain or swelling.

TAKE Cummin-seeds, and bruise them gross, and boyl it with the oyl of Camomile; then add to it so much yellow Wax as will bring it to the body of a Cerot or Plaster, and spread it on either Cloth or Leather, and very hot apply it to the grief. It is wonderful soveraign for any man also.

Another for any desperate old Strain, whether it be in the shoulders, Joints, Hips, or Back-sinews.

TAKE of the best *Aqua vitæ* a pint, of Oyl de Boy, of Oyl of Swallows, and of black Soap, of each half a pint; work and labour all these together, till they come to a thin ointment; then take of Camomile, and of red Sage an handful, of Rue, and of Messeldine an handful; dry them, and bring them to a very fine powder; Then mix them with the former ointment, and bring all to a gentle Salve.

With some of this Salve, made as hot as the Horse can suffer it, anoint the Strain, and hold an hot bar of Iron before the grieved place, chafing it in with your hand as much as may be: and thus do once

a day, and in nine days the Cure will be effected.

An Excellent Charge for any New Strain, or offence on the Sinews, or any grief proceeding from heat.

TAKE the whites of six Eggs, and beat them well with a pint of white Wine-Vinegar, and an ounce of the oyl of Roses, and as much of the oyl of Mintis; Then take four ounces of Bolearmonie, and as much *Sanguis Draconis*, and with as much fine Bean-flower, or wheat-flower, but Bean-flower is the best, as will thicken it: bring it to a stiff Salve, then spread it about the grieved place, and renew it as it drieth.

A perfect Cure for any Sinew Strain.

TAKE a live Cat, either wild or tame, and cut off her head and tail; then cleave her down the chine and clap her hot, the bowels and all, upon the strain, and remove it not for forty-eight hours, and the effect is great.

Markham's own Balm, which hath never failed him for any Strain in the Shoulder, or other part, bidden or apparent; Or any Wind-gall, Pain or Swelling whatsoever.

TAKE ten ounces of the best and purest Goose-grease, and melt it on the fire; then take it off, and put it into four ounces of the Oyl of Spike, and an ounce of the Oyl of Origanum: stir them very well together, then put it up into a Gallipot.

With

With this Ointment anoint the grieved part, the Ointment being made exceeding hot ; and rub and chafe it in with all painfulness, holding an hot bar of Iron before it : and thus anoint once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day at the least, and give the Horse moderate Exercise.

This is approved, and infallible.

For swell'd or Gourded-Legs, whether it be by reason of the Grease falling into them, or other accident, as Scratches, Pains, Mules, &c.

IF your Horse's Legs be swell'd only, because the Grease is fallen into them, and that there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold Water and other outward helps assuage it: Then you shall take a piece of strong course woollen Cloth, and thereof make him a Hose a pretty deal larger than his Leg, to reach from the lower part of his Pastern, up to the Cambrel, or to the Knee; and make it close and strait at the Pastern, and wide above. Then take a pottle of Wine-Lees (if you can get them) or else the grounds of Lees of strong Ale or Beer, and set them on the fire, and boyl them well; then put to them a pound of clarified Hog's grease, and when it is melted and stirred well together, take as much Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, and bring it to the Body of a Poultice: with this Poultice as hot as the Horse can suffer it (only you must not scald) fill the Hose or Hoses, and then close the Hose at the top.

With this Poultice let the Horse stand two days; then the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Poultice, only take molten Hog's grease, hot as the Horse can suffer it, and with a spoon pour it in-

to the Poultice on every side, till it will receive no more ; for this will renew the strength of the Poultice. Then close up the top of the Hose, and so let the Horse stand other two Days, or three. Then you may open the Leg and rub it down, and if you find strong occasion, you may apply another new Poultice ; if not, your cure is wrought.

Now if besides the swelling of his Legs, your Horse hath Ulcers, or Chaps, or Scratches, Pains, Mules, or the like.

Then you shall first apply the former Poultice, in all respects as aforesaid ; then after five or six days application, when you take the Poultice away, you shall take a quart of old Urine, and put to it half a handful of Salt, as much of Allum, and half an ounce of white copperas, and boyl it till all be mixt and incorporated together ; then with this water very hot wash the sores once or twice a day, and after a little drying, anoint them with the ointment called *Ægyptiacum*, and is made of Vinegar eight ounces, of Honey twelve ounces, of Verdegrease two ounces, of Allum one ounce and an half : boyl it to that height till it come to a red Salve ; and it will both kill the malignant humours, and also heal and dry up the sores.

Another approved Cure for the Scratches, or any Disease of that nature.

TAKE of Hogs-grease eight ounces, of Brimstone, of Lime, of Gunpowder, of each three ounces, of black Soap eight ounces, and of Soot as much as will suffice to bring the rest to a Salve : boyl the Hogs-grease and Soap together, and bring the other hard simples to a fine powder, and

and so mix all together, and make a black Ointment, with this anoint the sores once a day after they are cleansed and made raw.

For any Splint, Spaven, Ringbone, Curb, or any other hard Knot or Excretion.

First, having taken view of the Excretion, clip away the hair as far as the Excretion goeth and a little thought more: then take a piece of allum'd Leather, made as big just as the place you have bared, and fit it to the same proportion. Then take a little Shoemakers Wax, and spread it round about the very edge or verge of the same, leaving all the inward or middle part empty, and not touched with the Wax, according to this Figure O. Then take of the Herb called Sparagus, which hath the vertue to raise Blisters, and bruising it in a Mortar, lay some thereof on the Leather, in the void and empty place, which ought to contain the just quantity of the Knot or Excretion, and bind it fast thereon; suffering it so to lie (if it be in the Spring or Summer-time, when the Sparagus hath its full strength and vertue) two or three hours. But if it be in the Winter, then it hath less vertue; Then it is not amiss to revive the strength of the Herb, if you add to it a drop or two of Origanum, and let it lie a day; and be sure to tie up the Horse's head for two hours, for fear of biting it away.

When you have taken off the Plaister, anoint the place with Train-Oyl warm, and you shall find no Excretion.

An approved Cure for the Swift-Cut, or any bawing on the Legs whatsoever.

TAKE a pint of White-wine, and put to it two or three spoonfuls of Honey, and stir them well together; then boyl them till they be well incorporated together, and brought to the body of an Ointment. Then take it from the fire, and put in as much Turpentine as there was Honey before, and stir all well together. Then strain it with this Salve somewhat hot, bathe the Sores twice a day, and it is a most speedy healer,

For any Farcy, Mange, Scab, or Leprosy, wether in the Mane or otherwise.

FIRST let Blood, then take a quart of old Urine or Vinegar, and break into it a quarter of a pound or better of the best Tobacco; then set it on the fire of Embers, where it may simmer and not boyl, and so let it stew a whole night: then strain it, and with this water wash the infected place, whether it be in the Mane, or any other obscure place, and it is a certain Remedy.

For any Founder, Frettize, Surbait, or any imperfection in the Feet.

FIRST pare thin, open the heels wide, and take good store of Blood from the toes; then tack on a Shoe somewhat hollow: after, take of the best Frankincense, and rowling it in a little fine Cotton-wool or Bombast, with an hot Iron melt it into the Foot, betwixt the Shoe and the Toe, till the Orifice
where

where the Blood was taken be filled up. Then take half a pound of Hog's greafe, and melt it on the fire; then mix it with Wheat-bran, till it be as thick as a Poulrice. Then boyling hot, as is possible, stop up the Horſe's foot therewith; then cover it with a piece of an old Shoe, and ſplint it up, and ſo let the Horſe ſtand for three or four days; then if occaſion ſerves, you may renew it, otherwiſe the cure is wrought.

To make Hoofs grow quickly; and to be tough and ſtrong.

TAKE of the juice of Garlick ſeven ounces, of old Hog's greafe two pound, of Aſs's dung (for want of it Cow's dung) an handful: mingle them, and boyl them all well together; then with this, both ſtop the Horſe's foot, and anoint the Crownets of the Hoofs and the effect is great.

A general Salve for any ſore Swelling.

TAKE Turpentine, Black Soap, Hog's greafe, Green treat and Pitch, of each a little quantity; mix and boyl them all well together, and apply it warm to the grief.

For a Pearl, Pin, and Web, or any Film on an Horſe's Eye.

TAKE a new-laid Egg, and roaſt it very hard; then cleave it in ſunder long-ways, and take out the yolk; then fill the empty hole with white Vitriol finely beaten, and cloſe the Egg again. Then roaſt it the ſecond time, till the Vitriol be molten. Laſtly beat the Egg-shell and all
in

in a dish, and strain it, and with the moisture that comes from it, dress the Eye. This is approved.

For Grease fallen into the Legs, to help them at twice dressing, and to help the Scratches.

TAKE of Train-Oyl, of Nerve-Oyl, of Oyl *de Bay*, of each half a pint, and the bigness of an Egg of Allum; boyl them all well together; then having cleansed the Sores, and opened the Poultrice, if there be any, with this Salve anoint the Grieffs, and it is a speedy Cure.

For the Glanders, an approved Cure.

TAKE a quarter of a pint of Verjuice, three spoonfuls of Sallad Oyl, and two spoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ*; put one half into one Nostril, the other into the other Nostril, being blood-warm; then ride the Horse somewhat speedily for twenty or forty score, and only spare him when he coughs; then set him up warm, and at noon give him a warm Mash. Lastly, if you find him to grow sick, give him warm Milk from the Cow.

To stay the Glanders for a Time, till you may make sale of your Horse.

TAKE a pound of Elder-bark, being the green and not the grey, beat it in a Mortar, and strain it; then put that juice to a quart of Ale, and so give it to the Horse; do this for three Mornings together.

An approved Cure for the Pains, Mules, Rats-tails, and the like.

TAke green Vitriol half a pound, and boyl it in a pottle of running Water, with Allum, Mustard, Sage, and Hyfop, of each an handful. Now the night before you apply this, anoint all the Sores with strong Mustard, after they are made raw; then the next day wash them with the water before shewed, and the Cure is certain.

To help an Horse that galls between the Legs, either through heat or evil dressing.

TAke a raw Egg, and crush it between the Horse's Legs, and rub the gall well therewith, after the Sores are made dry.

For Enterfering, to help it or hide it, for a small time.

FAsten a new Cord to his Dock, and having made divers hard knots thereon, draw it between his Legs, and fasten it to his Girths; or otherwise, rub great store of Starch between his Thighs.

The best Receipt that can be for brittle hoofs.

TAke Dogs-grease a pound, and clarify it up with Rosemary; then mixing it with half so much Cow-dung, boyl it, and hot or cold, stop the Horse's foot therewith.

To cure the Scratches.

TAKE a penny-worth of Verdegrefe, a penny-worth of red Lead, the like quantity of Soap; mix these together, and apply it plaister-wise, letting it lye three days and three nights. You must cut the Hair close.

For the Farcy.

TAKE about one handful of Rue, and about ten Cloves of Garlick, and pound them together; then take one penny-worth of *Aqua vitæ*, and strain them through a Cloth; then take a little black Wool to drink up that moisture, and put into each Ear half the Wool, then sew up the Ears together; then cut the forehead of the Horse, and put into the hole the inner rind of an Elder, about an inch long, or something more; keep him from wet falling in to his Ears the first day and night.

Approved by Mr. Holled.

For to cure the Canker in a Horse's Mouth.

TAKE half a pint of the best White-wine-vinegar, and half a pound of the best Roch-Allum, and an handful of red Sage, and boyl them all together, and so wash the Horse's mouth and tongue.

Approved, W. B.

For to cure the Scratches.

TAKE Soap and Salt, and mix them together in your hand, and keep his Feet dry, and tye a linnen cloth about them, and it will cure them.

Approved, at Stanton.

For

For a Horse that hath a Cold.

TAKE new Butter unwashed, and without Salt, and mix with it brown Sugercandy, Anni-seeds, and Liquorish ; but if the Horse rattle in his head, put in two Cloves of Garlick made in Balls ; do this three Mornings together. *Approved, W. B.*

For a Beast that staleth Blood.

TAKE one quart of strong Ale, and a red Herring cut into small pieces, and let it lie a steeping in the Ale ; then give the Beast it with a Horn, and it will stay the in-bleeding of the Beast. *Robinson.*

For the Botts.

TAKE Salt and Water, and give it the Horse in a Horn. *Approved, Tho. Emson.*

For a Horse that hath got an over-reach, or a Tread of the Heel.

FIRST search it well to the bottom, and take out all the Gravel, and wash it with Stale ; then take a good handful of Nettles, and a good handful of Salt, put them in a cloth, and bind them to the fore ; do this two or three Mornings together, then set the Shoe on with a leather under it : Then pour in some Hog's grease scalding hot, after that pour in Rosin scalding hot, presently after which put in some Wheat-bran. *Approved, Pepper.*

For a Horse that hath gotten a stroke or a bite on the Eye.

TAKE a little Honey with a little grated Ginger ; mix them together, and put it into the Horse's Eye with a Feather : do this three Mornings together. *Approved, by me W. B.*

For

For the Scratches.

TAke Verdegrease and burnt Allum, mix them together, and so apply it, keeping the Horse dry.
Approved, W. B.

For the swelling of a Horse's back.

TAke Flax or Flax Tare, with the whites of Eggs and Wheat-flour; beat them all together, it will take the swelling down.
Approved, Tho. Emson.

For a Strain.

HOg's grease is very good for a Sinew-strain, or any other part of the Horse.
Approved by me W. B.

For a Horse that is Mangy.

TAke a gallon of strong Ale, and a pound of Tobacco-stalks, half a pound of Allum, a pint of Salt, one penny-worth of Mercury; boyl these all together until they be half boyled away; the day before, let the Horse Blood, and Curry him with a Comb, when the Horse is dress'd, wash the Manger with scalding water, and smoke the Saddle with Allum or Brimstone, burnt Hay or Straw.
Approved, Mr. Willes.

For

For the Spleen.

Make a Plaister of Oxycroceum, and spread it upon Sheeps-leather; lay it to the pain, and let it lye till it come off of itself. *Mr. Holden.*

A Glistre to expel Wind.

Take Fennel-seeds and Anni-feed, two spoonfuls of each, and bruise them; a little Camomile-flowers, Rosemary-flowers, Pellitory of the Wall, Penny-royal and Camomile, of each of these half a handful. *Mr. Holden.*

A Glistre for the Wind Colick.

Take a quart of thin Posset-drink, Penny-royal, Pellitory of the Wall, of each an handful; Mal-lows and Plantain, of each half an handful; and Cummin-seeds and Saxafrage-seeds of each one spoonful bruised, Cammomile-flowers one spoonful; boil them down to half the Posset-ale, take half a pint thereof, dissolve therein half an ounce of the Elee-tuary called *Eleetuarium de Baccis Lauri.* *Medcalf.*

For the Wind Colick.

BOyl one spoonful of Cummin-seeds with a few Camomile-flowers, in Posset-drink, is good to drink for the wind, for one that is costive in his Body. *Medcalf.*

How

*How to order, feed, and keep any Horse for Pleasure,
Hunting or Travel.*

I Would have your Keeper of these ordinary Horses to rise early in the Morning, by the spring of day, or before, according to the season of the year, and to sift the Horse the quantity of near three Pints of good old dry Oats, and to put to them an handful or two of spelted Beans, Hulls and all, and so give them to the Horse.

After he hath eaten them, let him dress him according to the order of good Horsemanship.

That is, First, curry with the Comb, then dust, then curry with the Brush, then dust, then rub with wet Hands, after with a clean Woollen Cloth, after with a clean Linnen Cloth, then pick all obscure places; Lastly, comb down the Main and Tail. Then saddle him, and ride him forth to water, then warm him both before and after very moderately, so bring him home dry without sweat.

Then cloath him up after you have rubbed his Head, Body, and Legs, and let him stand on his Bridle more than an hour; then give him the former quantity of Provender, and the same in kind.

After he hath eaten his Provender, give him into his Rack a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till after dinner.

When you have din'd, give him the former quantity of Provender, and the same in kind, and so let him rest till the Evening; only renew his Hay, if there be occasion.

At Evening dress him well, as in the Morning; then ride him forth to water, and do as you did in the Morning.

When

When you come home, and have clothed him up, let him stand on his Bridle, as before ; then give him the former quantity of Provender, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night ; at which time give him the former quantity of Provender, and a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till the Morning.

This you shall do concerning his Ordinary keeping at home, where the Horse hath rest, and that you may dispose of hours as you please ; but if you be either in Travel, or Sport, or other occasion, so that you cannot observe these particular times, then you must divide the main and whole quantity of meat into fewer parts and greater quantities, and give them at the best conveniency ; ever observing to give the least quantity before Travel, as a third part before Moun- ture, and the two other after you come to rest.

Nor would I have you to distract your mind with any doubt or amazement, because I prescribe you five several times of feeding in one day, as if it should either over-charge you, or over-feed your Horse ; Questionless there is no such matter, when you look into the true proportion ; for it cannot be denied, but whosoever is worthy of a good Horse, or good means to keep a good Horse, cannot allow him less than one Peck a day : Nay, the Carrier, Carter, Poulter, and Packhorse will allow half a peck at a watering, and this allowance which I set down comes to no more ; for 15 pints of Oats, and one pint of Spelt-beans up heaped, make two Gallons, and that is one Peck of Winchester measure. Now to give it at twice, fills the stomach more, makes the digestion worse, and the appetite weak ; whereas to give less, but more often, the stomach is ever craving, the digestion always ready, and the appetite never wanting ;

so that health (without disorder) can never be a stranger.

Therefore once again, thus much for ordinary keeping.

But if you intend to give an Heat, as to Hunt, Gallop, Travel, or the like, which I would wish you do once, twice, or thrice a week ; Then observe all your former observations ; only the night before, give him little or no Hay at all.

In the Morning early before his heat, and before his dressing, give him three or four handfuls of clean sifted Oats, washt either in strong Ale or Beer ; Then dress him, saddle him, and give him his heat.

But if it be sudden and violent, then let it be when the Horfe hath emptied himself very well.

After his heat rub him very well, and bring him dry into the Stable.

Then after he is cloathed up warm, let him stand on his Bridle at least two hours ; then give him a little bundle of Hay to tear out upon his Bridle, and an hour after feed him as hath been before shewed : Only with the first Oats give him an handful or better of Hempseed, well dusted and mixed.

At night warm him a little water, and give him it luke-warm ; then an hour after give him his Proven-der, and a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till the next Morning.

The next Morning do all things as in his ordinary keeping.

Let him stand on Litter both night and day ; yet change it often, and keep the Planches clean.

If you intend to travel or Journey in the Morning, then give him no Hay, or but little the Night before ; if you Journey in the afternoon, then give no Hay, or but little in the Morning.

In

In Journeying ride moderately the first hour or two; but after, according to your occasions. Water before you come to your Inn, if possible; but if you cannot, then give warm water in the Inn after the Horse is fully cooled.

Trotter's-oyl is an excellent Ointment, being applied very warm, and well chafed in, to keep your Horse's limbs and sinews nimble, and to help stiffness and lameness.

Neither wash your Horse nor walk him; for the first endangereth foundring in the Body or feet, and breedeth all surfeits; the latter is the ground of all strong colds, which turn to Glanders and Rottenness: but if necessity compel you to either, as foul ways and long stays, then rather wash your Horse's legs with pails of water at your Stable door, than to endanger him in any Pond or River.

And for walking, rather sit on your Horse's Back to keep his spirits stirring, than to lead him in hand, and with dull spirits to receive all manner of mischief.

This I think sufficient for clean and ordinary keeping.

An Order how to breed Horses:

The choice of your Stallion and Stud Mares.

First and principally you must foresee that your Stallion and Stud Mares be both of good and lively nature, and not subject to any natural diseases. For as heavy Horses and Mares will breed Colts of roilish and heavy nature, so if they be infected with

any natural disease, their Colts for the most part shall be troubled with the same disease.

Wild Mares be not best to keep for the Race.

IT shall be well done that you handle all your stud Mares, and make them tame and easy, whereby, besides the commodity you may have of their work, which cannot hurt their taming if they be soberly handled, you may be sure at all times to remove them from one Pasture to another, to bring them to be covered, and to take their Colts from them without great trouble, whereas wild Mares be not only cumbersome to keep, but also oftentimes do destroy the Colts in their bellies with their rashness, when you should handle them or any of their fellows.

At what Age your Mare is first to be handled and covered.

THE best Age to take up your Mare to make her tame, and to break her, is when she shall be two years old and the Vantage; and so you may the year following, when she shall be fully three years old and upward, put her to your Horse to be covered, which in my opinion is the best Age to put her first to the Horse, although some Writers be of opinion, that it is best that she be first covered at two years old.

How to inforce your Mares to come to be strained.

YOU may most conveniently bring her to be covered of your Stallion, if, four or five days before you will bring her to your great Horse, you cause
to

to be put to her in some close Pasture, kept and fenced for that purpose, some small stoned Nag to wooe her, that she may abide your great Horse, foreseeing that he be in no wise unfettered longer than some diligent man doth look on ; for if the Nag be at liberty at any time after she is disposed to take the Horse, she will be sure to be covered of him, though he be lower than she by a cubit.

The order of Covering.

WHen you do perceive that your Mare will abide the Nag, and doth shew other tokens that she is desirous to be covered, you must cause your great Horse that shall cover her to be provendered, and not to drink much the night before he shall cover her. Then in the Morning following, at the Sun rising, you may bring him to your Mare, or her to him, in some such place as neither of them can leap out of, where, when he hath covered her twice or thrice, let her remain feeding on Grass, with her Colt kept by her without water ; but let your Horse be taken up, well rubbed and well provendered to the next Evening ; and then put him to your Mare again where you left her, and let him cover her as often as he will that night, except you see your Horse chafe so much that he will marr himself.

How to use your Mare which is covered.

ANd so must you of force be driven to take him from her the second time, till the Morning following, at which time (except your Mare be satisfied with that which was done before) you must put to your Horse the third time, and when he hath co-

vered her as often as he will, between four of the clock in the Morning, and eight of the clock before noon, take up your Horse, and let your Mare be led into some water to the mid-side at least, where she may drink water, but not too much; and then let her be led and turned to the whole stud, where no other Horses must come for a whole Month at the least to beat her.

How to make that no Mare shall go barren.

AND when you have thus severally caused to be covered all your Mares, you must about *Lammas*, in the Month of *July*, or beginning of *August*, get a Mare or two which have not been covered that Year before, and enforcing them to be horsed by such means as before appointed, when they shall be ready to be covered, you must turn them with some other Stallion, whom you esteem not as your best Horse, among your stud of Mares; and so he covering that Mare or Mares you turned in with him unto the stud, shall cause the rest (if any of them have not conceived at their first covering) to come to that Horse again, whereby you shall be sure to keep no Mare barren all the year, but to have of every Mare a Colt, though not by your best Horse. You may suffer that Horse to run amongst your Mares three Weeks or a Month. But if you turn him into your stud, putting no mare in with him ready to be covered, he will at his first entry beat all your Mares, and so unhappily hurt all your Mares which had conceived before, and so do more hurt than good.

What

What time of the Year is best for your Mares to be covered.

THe best time of the year to have your Mare covered, is from the end of *May* to the end of *July*, and then shall your Mare, which always goes with Foal one year lacking a month, Foal in such time of the year as she shall find plenty of grafs to nourish herself and her Colt withal: whereas if you suffer her to be covered in *February*, *March*, or *April*, she will Foal so early in the year, that oftentimes being bare, and not covered of the winter past, she doth hunger both herself, and marr her Colt, for lack of feeding.

To Diet your Stallion for the time he shall cover.

Here is to be noted, that although your Stallion, standing at hard meat, will not miss to get a Colt on your Mare going to Grafs, (if she be ordered and inforced as before) yet the best diet for him for the whole time he shall cover, is to feed on Grafs: when he hath tasted of the grafs with them, he will like his Hay the worse; and also there is more danger in breaking of his wind in feeding on Hay than grafs.

How your breeding Mare is to be used when she shall foal.

YOur breeding Mare that hath a Colt in her belly, must fourteen or fifteen days before she Foal be taken from the stud, and with some other gentle Mare or Gelding be put in some other rank Pasture, well fenced for that purpose; which will not only

make her lusty, and soon ready to be covered, and able to Foal without danger, but also give plenty of milk to her Colt when he is first foaled.

How many years a Horse will serve to cover your Mares.

YOur Stallion used as is before, will serve for six or seven years, to cover every year seven or eight Mares, and do you service the rest of the year besides; whereas turned abroad to your Mares, he can do you no other service, neither will he last above three years.

The best age for Horse or Mare to get or bear Colts, and how many years they will continue good.

THe best age for Horse or Mare to get or bear Colts, is, for the Mare, from three years old till ten: And for the Horse, from four or five years till twelve; and after that age the Colts of them wax heavy, weak and slothful.

What time of the year is best to wean the Colts from their Dams.

THe best time of the year to wean your Colts is at Candlemas, or Shrove-tide, after the time as your Colt is Foaled; wherein you must use much diligence; for if your Colt be not well weaned, well Summered, and well Wintered, the three first years, and namely the first year when he moaneth for his Dam, he shall seldom or never come to be a good Horse. And therefore when you wean your Colts, you must bring them to some house ordained for the same purpose, clean out of the hearing of their Dams; wherein

wherein they must be pinned, and not to come abroad the first fourteen days, out of the hearing of their Dams: whereunto you must have pasture adjoining, wherein they may play, and feed every fair day after the fourteen days past, from the time you begin to wean them till grass be fully sprung in *May*; and put them into some such pasture, as commonly your Milch-kine be fed in, where they may neither, feeding in high and rank grass, hurt their Reins, or grow thick necked, nor for lack of feeding hinder their growth, but feeding in a short sweet grass, may prove well till they have forgotten their Dams.

What feeding is best for Colts, from two years old upward.

THIS is a general ground, that wet lying and lack of feed in the winter, and old rank feeding in summer, from two years old forwards, doth marr the most part of our whole breed in *England*; which, in my opinion, well ordered, would breed the best Horses for all kind of service, of the whole Earth; for as wet lying and lack of good feeding in the winter, doth breed a heartless ill shapen Horse, subject to all cold and watry diseases both in his Body and limbs; so over rank feeding in the Summer, chiefly from two years old upward, doth breed an evil reined, and a slothful Horse, ever ready (being over-laden with fat flesh) to be more foundered, and to catch the Glanders and Cough upon every Cold. And therefore your best feeding of your Horse-colts from two years old upward, for the Summer-feeding, is where he may have a large walk, and hungry short feeding, and not yet so bare, but that he may (traveling for it) feed himself full once in a day, and that he

he hinder not himself of his growing : but in anywise keep your Horse-colts from knowing any Mare till they be five years old.

Why English Horses being taken up so young are not good.

THe cause why our *English* Horses be taken up so young, as I have heard fundry of our chief Horse-masters say, is, that our Horses being great and well fed, if they should run till they should come to their full strength, would be so sturdy and mischievous to break, that they would rather mischief themselves and their Breaker than be made tame ; which in my fancy is but a vain opinion. For there was never so sturdy nor so wilful a Horse, which would not be tame and easy to handle, with watching and hunger, within one month at the farthest, if his Keeper will use diligence.

The way to handle a sturdy Horse.

ANd that may most conveniently be brought to pass, if at the first coming into the house, before he will suffer his Keeper to handle him and to take up his feet, he do put no meat before him, but let him take all his feeding at his Keeper's hands, and so shall you make him gentle and tame without stripes or striving ; and the order before appointed in his breaking, being the Colt of a tame Mare, and fed some part of every Winter at hand in the house, will acquaint him with the man, and make him almost tame before he be taken up : which Colt shall seldom prove a fearful or a blenching Horse.

The

The using of Horses after they be handled.

ANd for Conclusion, whoever doth use to keep his Horse Bridled after riding till he be in good temper, and almost cold, and doth not give him water nor meat, being hot, neither doth ride him fast upon a full stomach, shall seldom or never have his Horse lame or sick, if he breed him as is aforesaid, before he take him up.

What feeding is best in Winter for Mares, and Weanlings, of two years old.

ANd for the winter feeding you must use one order for your Mares, and Weanlings of two years old in several places, which is a hovel or house made for them adjoining to your Winter Pasture, wherein you must sometime in the evil weather, in a rack made for that purpose, give them some fodder, and be sure that they be brought into that house every night that is like to prove wet, but in the frosty days and nights it is best to pin them abroad.

You must in anywise keep one pasture nigh to the house that you feed your Mare-colts in the Winter-time, which pasture may not be fed in before *Shrove-tide*, because that time and the Middle of *May*, (before which, grass is not sufficiently sprung in most places for Horses to feed on) is the most time of danger to hunger-bane of all the year: In which time, if your Colts growing all the Summer following, will make your Colt-Mares so bare, that they shall not be able to foal, nor give their Colts sufficient suck.

At what age Colts may best be handled.

WHen your Horse-Colt hath been bred as is afore appointed, the best age in my opinion to take him up to break, is when he shall be full four years old and the vantage; or if you may spare him, and have good close ground to keep him in, rather at five years old and the vantage, for then will his joints and sinews be strong and well knit, his hoofs ever tough, and not brittle, his eye-sight good, his chine strong, so that you cannot hurt him, neither in breaking nor in reasonable riding; besides, he will last a good Horse till he be 24 or 25 years old: whereas, if you will take him up at two or three years old, as we commonly do, you shall find him afterwards many times blind, brittle hoofed, weak back'd, full of windgalls and splints, and shew himself to be an old stiff Horse before he come to be ten years old, as the most part of their *Spanish* Horses do, because they are taken up so young; which is, because that in *Spain* they have no good close ground to let their Colts run longer in, and not for any other Commodity.

Cure For The Scurvy
 Take one tea-cup full of soft soap
 one tea-cup full of vinegar and tea-cup
 full of salt - beat them well together and
 rub with it about three times a week
 for two or three months, on sun shi-
 days or if not dry it in well in
 the shovel or a hot-brick

Approved

Approved Receipts
For the Curing of all Diseases
Incident to

H O R S E S.

Receipt I. To draw out any Thorn or Nail in any place.

TAKE Dodmonds, which are House-snails, and seeth them in Butter and apply them, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail. And so will the Roots of Reeds, if they be bruised and laid to, being bound to the wounded place with a linnen cloth: He may run out, but to stand in is better.

Proved.

II. A perfect Drier of a Green Wound, or any other Sore.

TAKE Soap and unslaked Lime, and mix them well together; but before you lay it to, wash the wound or sore with a little White-wine-Vinegar, and then apply it.

Proved.

A marrow-bone burnt and made into Powder and strewed on a sore or wound, is a great Drier.

III. *For any Anbury.*

TAKE a hot Iron and make it very sharp ; and take the Anbury in your hand, and sear it off to the bottom with a red hot Iron : Then mix a little beaten Verdegrease and Train-oyl together ; heat them, anoint the place once a day till it be whole.

Proved.

IV. *For the Flaps in any Horse's mouth.*

TO know this, you shall perceive his Lips to be swell'd on both sides of his mouth, and that which is in the blisters is like the white of an Egg ; you must cut some slashes in it with a knife, then rub it once with Salt, and it is cured.

Proved.

V. *To rot a Sore or Swelling.*

ANoint the Sore or Swelling with cold bacon-grease once in two days, till it be soft ; then open the skin with a Pen-knife at the bottom of the Sore, and let out the filth ; and so heal it up with your healing Salve.

Proved.

See the water and Green Oyntment.

VI. *Directions how to lay a Wound open, and where ; and how to miss the Veins under it, be it in Body or Legs.*

WHEN you cut a Sore open, lay it draining at the bottom, or a little lower : Be sure always to do this. To miss the Master Vein, if it lie lengthwise in the body, be sure to cut under the Vein :

If

If it be a Sore upon the Leg, that lies right over the Vein, then cut it side-ways of the Vein right up and down. If a sore happen to be hollow a great length, be it in body or legs, then cut a hole at the lowest place, that the filth may drain from the Sore the better; then put in your finger under the Vein; and when your finger is past the Vein upwards as far as it will go, cut at your finger's end another hole; and if you see occasion, turn your finger to another place, and at your finger's end cut another hole. If you chance at any time to cut a Vein in pieces, put in a piece of a Hare's skin with the wool on, or Cony-wool; but Hare's is the best, and this will stop the bleeding.

That Hare's wool will stop bleeding sooner than most things: See Receipt to stop bleeding in Veins that be cut.

VII. *The way to put in a French Rowel.*

THat is, upon the lowest part of the Horse's breast to that side that is lame, you shall with a sharp knife cut the skin through, not cross the breast, but right down, half the length of your Finger; then put your Finger between the skin and the flesh, and raise the skin from the flesh round about the hole the breadth of a six-pence; then take a piece of the upper leather of a shoe, and cut it in the manner of this Figure here prescribed; cut the piece of leather round, and then cut out a hole round, as you see by the Figure; then put a Needle and a Thread through it, as you may perceive by the two pricks in the top and bottom of the hole; then take a Tobacco-pipe or a quill, and cut it so that the wind may go through it; and put
one



one end into the hole of his breast upwards, and blow in the wind and beat the wind upwards to the top and all over his shoulder: when you have blown it two or three times, run the Needle and thread once through the Rowel, and once through the skin, and draw the Rowel into the cut: When you have thus placed the Rowel in the cut, with the hole of the Rowel right against the hole that you have cut in the breast, so that it may not move; then with your



Needle and thread run a stitch or two overthwart the cut to keep in the Rowel, as you are directed in the Margin: when you have done thus, anoint it with a piece of Butter, and let the Rowel stand a week in the hole, and then cut the thread and take it out. This is the best Rowel that is. *Proved.*

Your breath must not smell of Tobacco when you blow the skin up (for a sweet breath is best;) if it do, the place will swell the more.

VIII. *A rare Green Ointment to heal any Wound, old or new, quickly.*

TAKE a handful of water-Betony, as much of Comfry, of Mugwort, red Sage, Sage of *Bethlehem*, by some called *Jerusalem Sage*, of Southernwood, of Rue, by some called Herb of grace, of Rosemary, of each of these an handful; boyl all these in a pint of *May Butter*, and as much Mutton-Suet; and when it hath boyl'd a while, take it off the fire and strain it through a cloth, and put it into a pot for your use. This Ointment will last good a year.

Proved.

Before you lay this Ointment to, wash the Wound first with the water which you have in Receipt 38.

IX.

IX. *To take a Film off an Horse's Eye.*

YOU must take as much of Dialthæa as the bigness of a Walnut, and put to it the Powder of Verdegrease as much as an Hasel-nut : mix them well together, then every day put into his Eye as much of it as the bigness of a Pea : This will take off any Film whatsoever. *Proved.*

X. *A Medicine to defend and keep back humours from a Wound, so that it may heal the sooner.*

TAKE two pints of Tarter, or the dregs of White-wine-Vinegar, but the Tartar is better ; and put in as much Bolearmoniack as the bigness of an Egg ; an handful of white or bay Salt, and an handful of great Bur-dock leaves, or the Roots : wash the swell'd place, and round about the swelling with this once a day ; this will hasten the cure very much, if you do so wash it with this, and apply to the wound your healing Salves or Ointmen, as you may in this Book be furnished with store of them for that purpose. *Proved.*

XI. *Another for the same.*

TAKE a pint of Verjuice, and put to it three penny-worth of Camphire, cut very small ; boyl them together a quarter of an hour, and when it is almost cold, put it into some Glasse or pot, and wash the swell'd place round about it once a day with this, till it be healed with other Medicines.

This will much further the Cure of any wound or Sore, where humours do fall down to it, whilst you

do apply other Medicines to heal up the sore or wound: For these defensives are for no other purpose but to keep back humours that hinder Sores or Wounds from healing. *Proved.*

XII. *A rare Receipt for a Farcion.*

TAke Mullin, by some called Higtaper; it hath a great woolly leaf, it groweth close by the ground upon the banks of ditches, or in the high-ways side; Chickweed, Groundfel, and Wood-Betony, of each an handful, cut them small, and Boyl them all in a quart of Ale, and when it is luke-warm put in two penny-worth of Quick-silver, and give it him to drink fasting. The third day after give him the like proportion, warm water all the while to drink, and to stand in. *Proved.*

XIII. *For a Horse that hath his Fundament fallen out; or for a Cow that hath the Mother fallen out.*

TAke an armful of Willow-boughs, and dry them on a hot Hearth; when they are dry, sweep the Hearth as clean as you can, and set them on fire, and burn them to ashes; then take the ashes and searce them through a fine boulder, and before you strew on the Powder of the ashes, wash the Fundament with warm water, to make it as warm as the Body; then strew on the finest of the ashes, and put the Fundament up into its place; then tye a line to the Horse's tail, and bring it between his hinder-legs, and fasten it to a Suringle under his belly pretty strait: using this means, his Fundament will be kept up, and in a very short time it will be knit firm and strong again. If the Mother of a Cow come forth, use but the afore-

aforesaid means, and you will find it a perfect remedy.
Both proved.

White Pepper beaten finely and searced through a fine searce, the Fundament being well warmed with warm water or Milk, and after warmed with a warm cloth, and then this beaten Pepper strewed upon it, and so put up, and his tail tied close between his Legs, as before, you will find it very good.

A Marrow-bone of a Bullock burnt in the fire, and beaten to fine powder, is, for a Wound, a great and good drier and healer, and will skin a Wound.

Proved.

The inward and outward bark of a Willow-tree, first dried, and afterwards the hearth being swept very clean, burnt to ashes, and the ashes sifted through a fine boulder: the finest of these ashes is good to dry up any Sore; nothing like it. These ashes are likewise a great binder for a looseness in Horses or Cows Bodies.

Proved.

XIV. To kill Lice of Horses and Cows.

TAKE a quantity of Hog's-grease, and anoint the Horse underneath the Mane, and upon the ridgebone of the Back; it will burst them all presently.

XV. For a stub or other hurt in or about the Foot.

TAKE Bees-wax, Pitch, Hog's-grease, and Turpentine; boyl them together in an earthen pan, but put in the Turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and stir it well together; make the wound clean, and pour it in scalding hot; dip hards or tow in it, and stuff the place where it is hurt full with it,

and it will heal it in a short time. This will last a year. *Proved.*

XVI. *To Cleanse any Wound old or new:*

TAKE the Roots of Elder and beat them to powder, and boyl them with *English* Honey: It is good to cleanse any Sore old or new. But take this for a general observation, that before you dress any Wound, let it be where it will about the Horse, wash it clean first with White-wine vinegar, and then dress it with your Salve. *Approved.*

XVII. *For the Sleeping Evil.*

THE signs to know it are: the Horse will stand sleeping in a corner continually, with his head hanging down to the ground; it takes away his memory. The Cure is to be performed thus: Let him Blood on both sides the neck in the morning, fasting, before he drink; let him Blood also in the Mouth, in the third furrow in the roof of his mouth; and after he hath bled well, give him this drink: Take of Camomile and Mother-wort, together three handfuls, cut small, and boyl them in two quarts of Running water half an hour, and then give the Horse a pint once in two days fasting; the third day give him the rest fasting, and three or four hours after give him warm water, and a little comfortable Mash, made of ground Mault, put into scalding hot water after it comes off the fire: keep him in the house warm the time of the cure, and fume his head as you do for the Staggers, and this in a short time is a perfect cure. *Proved.*

XVIII. *To stop bleeding at the Nose.*

THe chief cause thereof is the thinness of the Vein in the head; you must let him Blood in both the Plate-veins, and then wind a thum-band of wet Hay about his neck, and throw cold water upon the thum-band till you see the Blood to stanch; the thum-band must be so long, that it may be wound from his ears to his breast very lightly.

XIX. *For the falling Evil in an Horse.*

THe falling evil will cause him suddenly to fall down, and to lie sprauling with his heels, and foaming at the mouth, like a man that hath the Falling-sickness; you shall know whether he be subject to fall often, by feeling him by the gristles of his Nose, which will be cold if he be subject to it. The Cure is, to let him Blood on both sides of his neck; after he hath bled, in the morning before he drink, give him this drink: Take Mifeltoe that groweth upon an Apple-tree, the leaves are like Ivy-leaves; dry it and rub it to powder, and use it at your leisure: give him of this powder of Mifeltoe one spoonful in half a pint of Sack, and keep him in the house till he be well, and give him to drink water luke-warm.

Approved.

You may add to the Mifeltoe three drams of the Electuary, called Theriaca Diatesaron, or the Oil of Pepper, one dram, or a dram and an half.

XX. *For a Cough old or new, or the heaving of his Lungs.*

TAKE the Root of *Gentian*, which you shall have at the Apothecary's ; slice it, dry it, and beat it to powder, give the beast as much of this powder as will lie upon a shilling in half a pint of his own water ; give this to him fasting once in three days, and so continue every third day, till you see his Cough and Heaving to abate or be quite gone : the cold of his water must be just taken off, and he must stand in all the time of the Cure. This for an old Cough or heaving of the Lungs, is the best Cure in the world.
Proved.

XXI. *For a Canker in the Tongue.*

YOU shall see his Mouth and Tongue raw within ; you shall know it by his stinking breath and his roping flavering : which to cure, take as much Roch-Allum as an Egg-Shell contains, boyl it in three or four spoonfuls of White-wine-Vinegar, with a spoonful of *English* Honey, and an handful of *Columbine-leaves* cut small : wash his Tongue once a day till it be whole : It will be cured in two or three times dressing ; you may tie a rag about a stick and wash his mouth.
Proved.

XXII. *For a Vein that swells upon letting Blood.*

AS when the wind gets in it will do ; or when a fleam miscarries it will do the like. For the cure of which, take white Pitch, black Pitch and Rosin, of each a like quantity ; boyl them together, and lay

lay it on hot with a flat stick, and then flock it; and this doing once in four or five days, will take down the swelling: do it all over the swelling; if once will not do, do it oftner: he must stand in with dry meat the time of the Cure. You may anoint it with the Oil of Populeon, or apply Soap and Brandy.

Proved.

XXIII. *For a Navel-Gall.*

TAKE and cut off the loose skin first with a Knife, and apply to it this Salve: mix as much as a Walnut of Verdegrease, with a Spoonful of Dialthæa, and a Pint of Train-oil, and it will cure it: if it be old done and hard, cut out the Crust, and sear the wound within with a hot Iron, and then dip some Cotton in the green Ointment, and put it in as a Tent.

Proved.

XXIV. *For a Horse that pisses blood.*

TAKE of Tarragon a spoonful, and steep it in White-wine, and as much Poppy seed, beaten, as will lie on a Shilling: give this in the White-wine, and it is a certain Cure: Give this fasting.

Probatum est.

XXV. *For the Mules.*

YOU shall know this by the staring of the hair, above the fore part of his Hoof on his after Leg, and by the dew that stands on his feet above the hoof. For the cure: Take Linseed-oil, and black Soap, of each a like quantity, boyl them together, and before you anoint his Sore at any time, wash it clean,

and dry it, and then anoint it with the aforesaid Salve,
and it will cure. *Proved.*

XXVI. *For a Horse burnt with a Mare.*

YOU shall know this by the mattering of his Yard within. For Remedy, take a Pint of White-wine, boyl in it a quarter of a pound of Roch-Allum ; and when it is boyled and cool, it must be squirted in with a Syringe, as far into his Yard as you can, this will cure him in a few times doing.
Proved.

XXVII. *A precious Ointment that will cure any Wound, old or new.*

TAKE half a pint of refined Sallad-oil, and put it into a Skillet, then put to it a quarter of a pound of Rosin ; boyl these together, and when it is boyled, put in three penny-worth of Verdegrease beaten to a fine Powder ; stir them well together, and keep it for your use ; if the wound be hollow and deep, put in a Tent of this Ointment to the end of the wound, anointing it beside : *Proved.*---Train-oil and Verdegrease melted together, will heal and skin any wound well and quickly.

XXVIII. *For a Farcion.*

YOU must first give him the drink that is made with running water, in that Receipt which you are to give once in three days : For this Farcion, you must, in the morning before he hath drank, give him that Drink made of running Water : the same morning fear the head of every bud with a hot Iron,
then

then take yellow Arsenick, and beat it to powder, and mix it with black Soap ; as much Arsenick as a Hasel-nut, to as much black Soap as a Spoon will hold, or a little more ; then lay on a little at a time for once and no more ; lay it on no where but just on the top or head of the bud of every Farcion ; the bigness of a Pea will serve, being laid upon the top or head of every Farcion, and within one week you shall see them all drop out ; then do nothing but anoint the hole with Sallad-oil once a day till it be whole, and it will cure him ; be sure to do as I have directed and no otherwise, for Arsenick is rank Poison, and a great Eater. *Proved.*

XXIX. For Sole-beated with going without Shoes.

FOr a Horse that is Sole-beated by going without Shoes, you must first pare him close towards the toe, then take a Pen-knife, and with the point cut a little hole through the bottom of the hoof, a matter of half an inch from the toes, and right over the vein, and let the vein bleed a quarter of a pint ; then set on his Shoes pretty hollow within the feet, and boyl Tar, Tallow and Turpentine together, and pour it into his foot or feet scalding hot, and stuff in Wool or Hards after it, to keep and make it stay in ; you may put in flat sticks between his Shoes, and the bottom of his Hoof, and it is cured with once putting in.

XXX. For a Pricking in the foot.

WHen a Horse is pricked in the foot, when he standeth still he will mostly stand upon his toe : and if at any time a Smith prick a Horse, then
be-

before you take off his Shoe to pare his foot, take your Pincers and try by nipping him with them where the ailment lies, or by knocking in of the Nail upon the head with your Hammer; as soon as you see where the ailment is, take off his Shoe, and pare him by degrees with the Butteris and your Drawing-knife; When you have found the bottom of the wound, and have made it clear to your mind, then take Turpentine, fresh Butter, with a little black Pitch boiled together, and pour it in scalding hot; then dip some Hards or Tow in the same, and stuff it well between the shoe and foot, you may take a piece of upper-leather or sole-leather, and do it between the Shoe and the Hards, or you may splinter it in with sticks. But if it be a long Channel-nail that struck into his foot on the Road as you rid him, or as you wrought him, then pluck the Nail out, and heat it presently red hot, and put it into the hole so far as it went in at the first: When you have thus seared it with the red hot Nail, which will keep it from rankling and festering, then melt Turpentine and fresh Butter, with a little black Pitch together, and pour it in scalding hot: Then clap on the Shoe, and stuff the foot with Tow or Hards, keeping it in as before you were directed; this will cure certainly. *Proved.*

XXXI. *An Oyntment to skin or heal any wound or hurt.*

TAKE two spoonfuls of Dog's grease, one spoonful of black Soap, and as much Roch-allum burnt and beaten to powder as a Hasel-nut: Put the burnt Allum in when the other are melted and taken off the fire, and stir them well together in an earthen Vessel, and

and you may keep it a year or more : Not tried, but it is very probable.

XXXII. *To take down any Swelling, being new, whether it be broke or not broke.*

TAKE two pints of red Wine Vinegar, and boyl in it four handfuls of Foles-foot leaves, not cut, but wrung to pieces with your hands: When it begins to boyl, put in two handfuls of Bay-salt, and when the Salt is melted in it, take it off the fire, and when you use it, heat it as hot as you can endure your hand in it, and with it anoint the place once a day till it be asswaged : This also is a very likely Medicine, but by me not tried.

XXXIII. *For a Quitterbone, though far gone, and hard to cure.*

TAKE off a quarter of the Hoof right under the Quitterbone, that it may drain the better : You may do it after this manner that this Figure directs : Take a drawing Knife, and draw it down after this manner, to the quick on both sides and below, according to the figure, then take hold with a pair of Pincers persently below the piece of Hoof, then pull it away ; when it is off, lay a piece of Hare's skin to it lightly to stanch the blood, and do not look to it in twenty four hours ; then take all the Hare's skin away, and wash it once with Wine-Vinegar, and scald it with Butter and Salt boiled together as hot as may be, to kill the rankling, and to keep it from dead flesh ; do this three times once every other day : And then take Verdegrease as much as three Hasel-nuts beaten to powder ; then take a

quar-

quarter of a pint of Wine Vinegar, and as much Honey : Boyl them together with the Verdegrease, and keep it continually stirring the time it boyls, which must be half an hour ; then take it off the fire, and put it into a Pot or Pipkin, and anoint the wound with it once a day till it be whole ; when it is whole, then anoint the Hoof, to make it grow, with Tar, Taliow, Turpentine, Dog's-grease, boyled together : put in the Turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and stir it well ; keep him dry in the house the time of the cure : Forbear to pull of the Hoof if you think you can cure him without, for that will take a long time the curing, to make the Hoof compleat ; this is a certain way, but it is none of the readiest, this way is when all other ways fail.

XXXIV. *For a Foundred Horse.*

TO take out the Soles of his Feet you must pare the Foot thin, then at the end of the Frush you must cut the Hoof after this Manner, as this Figure shews. Cut the middle of the Sole just at the Frush's end, in the fashion of a Hen's tongue, and raise it a little with the point of your Knife, as you may see in the midst of this Figure, which I have made near the fashion of a Horse Hoof. When you have cut and raised the little piece at the Frush's end, then take your Penknife, and with the point thereof, prick the Vein till it bleed ; the Vein lies right under the little piece in the middle of the Foot at the Frush's end : when it hath bled, close down the piece of Hoof again, then let him stand in the Stable the time of the Cure, and not drink his water abroad. When you see him halt, and that you think it is festred enough between the Sole and

and the quick, round about the bottom of the Hoof, being thus festred, the Sole will come out easier by a great deal, and with less danger of pulling away the Veins with the Sole of the Foot; if you let it fester in this manner, before you pull it out, you must take your drawing knife, and draw the Hoof to the quick, round about the Sole, within the Hoof, as you may see by this Figure: When you have drawn it to the quick round about, then raise the Sole at the Toe, and take hold of it with a pair of Pincers, and pull it upwards to the heel, and so pull it quite out: when it is out, apply Hare's-wool to stanch the blood, and within 24 hours take away the Wool again; then wash the Sole of the Foot with Chamberlie; then set on the Shoe, and put in Pitch, Turpentine and Hog's-grease, melted together, of each an equal proportion, dipping Hards or Wool in the same Medicine, and apply it to the bottom of the Foot; stuff it in with Splinters, or a Sole of Leather to keep it in; apply this Medicine three times in a week or ten days; three times is enough: You must never take out the Soles of both his fore-feet at one time, for then he will never be able to stand. Hereafter in another Chapter I will give you the practice of another, which in my judgment is far more easie for the Beast than to fester the Foot; which is first to cord the Foot-lock hard, that it may not bleed, then to draw round about the Sole to the quick, and so to pull out the Sole without festering, by cording of it; it will not bleed at all after you have pulled out the Sole, so that you need not to take care to stanch the blood: But as soon as you have pulled out the Sole, you may wash it with Chamberlie, and then put in the aforesaid materials: After you have set on the Shoe, stuff it as you were before directed. *Proved.*

XXXV. *For a Splent.*

YOU must cast the Horse first ; then you must beat the place with a blood-stick or other stick till you feel it soft ; then fleam it in three or four places, upon the Splent, and squeeze out the blood with your Stick, your Fingers and Thumb : Then take as much Hog's-grease as a Walnut, as much Bole-armoniack, and Brimstone as much ; beat these two last to powder, and mix them with grease, and spread it upon a sheet of grey Paper, and lay it upon the splent, then heat a Brick very hot, and dry the medicine in with it, then melt some black Pitch in an Iron pan, and dip some flocks in it, and dab it on all over the splent close, that it may lie on sure ; and when the flocks come off, the splent will come out : but if the flocks come off before the splent, then lay on more flocks till the splent come out ; and as soon as it does come out, wash it with a little White-wine Vinegar, and then anoint it with Sallad-oil and Turpentine melted together ; anoint it cold till it be whole, once a day, and in a week's time the splent will come out and be whole. This you may do, but it makes a great blemish ; it takes away hair and flesh, and sometimes the hair comes no more. You shall have a Receipt hereafter for this purpose, that it will not take off the hair nor break the flesh : It is a very gallant one, that will lay the splent flat in a few hours.

XXXVI. *For a through great Splent.*

BEAT it and fleam it, as you were directed in the other ; then take as much Crown-Soap as an Egg, and mix it with as much Bole-armoniack on purpose that none may know that you use any thing but Soap ;
lay

lay it on a piece of grey Paper, and heat a Brick hot and dry it in, as you did the former : This is much of the Nature of the former. *Proved.*

XXXVII. *For a Splent great or small, an excellent one.*

IF it were never meddled with before, be it great or small, this will cure it : First, Take a piece of Leather as broad again as will cover the splent, then take of Cantharides, which is a Fly that you may have at the Apothecary's, and beat them to powder, or very fine : take of them half a quarter of an ounce at a time, mixed with as much Nerve-oyl as contains to half a Walnut, bray them well together, and lay them upon a piece of Leather, and bind it on for eight or ten hours, and then take it off, and stroke it down with your Fingers and Thumb twice or thrice a day, till you see it quite fallen : This Medicine will dissolve the Splent into a Water : And you shall see it sweat out drops of Water, doing it with your Fingers and Thumb every day. If it be a great through Splent, lay it on twice, if it be a little one, but once doing will serve ; he must stand in all the time of the Cure ; you may ride him after you have taken the Medicine off : take a piece of Tape to bind it on : Make no more at a time than you shall use, it will not last as to do good. This will not diminish a hair, but sink it flat. This Medicine is not to be laid to a Splent that hath been formerly meddled with, where the swelling still remains, and the hair is come off, and the skin very thin ; the Medicine is too strong, and will soon eat the thin skin to pieces in such a case.---Proved to be right good.

XXXVIII. *A Water to cure any old or green Wound,
in Man or Beast.*

TAke half a pound of Bole-armoniack, a quarter of a pound of white Copperas, two ounces of Roch-Allum ; beat your Roch-Allum and Copperas small, and put them into a Pipkin, and melt them together, and when they are cold, put them with the Bole-armoniack into a Mortar, and beat them all together to a fine powder : Then take a pottle of Running Spring-water, where the Spring boils with a blew sand at the bottom, if possible, rather than in any other Spring ; set this pottle of Spring-water on the fire with a close Skillet, till it be scalding hot, and then put it into a clean earthen Pitcher, and put two spoonfuls of this Powder into the Water, and stir it up well together, before you let it stand to settle ; and when the Water hath stood two or three days settling, then skim off the uppermost froth, put the water into another Pitcher clean from the Dregs, and afterward use it when you have occasion : But when you use it either for Man or Beast, warm the Water as hot as can be endured either by Man or Beast : When you wash any wound, of a Man, let the Cloth lie a while wet upon the wound, and wet a double Cloth in the same water, and bind it on plaisterwise, renewing it two or three times a day : For any wound, old or new, always wash it first with this Water, and then apply the green Ointment to it afterwards, which you shall find in Recp. VIII.

Proved.

XXXIX.

XXXIX. *A Receipt to cure a Horse-Pestilence.*

TAke of wormwood a handful, of Rue a handful, of Celandine roots a handful, to be cut small; then put them into a quart of Aloes-Milk, boyl it till it comes to a pint, then strain it, and put to it half a pound of fresh Butter, then give it the Horse in the Morning fasting, pretty warm, and keep him from drinking two days, and if he does drink, let it be cold water; and if Grafs may be had, let him eat Grafs.

Another Receipt for a Febula, or Horse-Pestilence.

TAke one ounce of Storax, one ounce of Benjamin, one ounce of Betony, a quarter of an ounce of *English* Saffron; these being beaten all to a powder, put them into a quart of new Ale, and give it to the Horse to drink: Let him not have any warm water, but keep him as before from any drink two days, and let him eat Grafs, if to be had.

XL. *For the Yellows.*

YOU shall know this by his faint sweating at the roots of his Ears, and the white of his Eyes will be yellow, you must first let him blood in the Neck-veins, or on both sides of the Neck; then take Elder-leaves, Celandine, and Camomile, of each a handful; Cut them small, and give them to the Horse in a pint and a half of the best Beer, being heated luke-warm, fasting. You may run your Cornet-horn into the third roof in the palate of his mouth; keep him warm, and give him warm wa-

ter to drink for a day or two, and this drench will certainly cure him. *Proved.*

XLI. *For a Chest-Founder.*

TO know this, he will go crimpling, and stand stradling, and covet to lie down: Take six penny-worth of the Oil of Peter, and bathe it well into his breast, rub it in well at the first, then dry it lightly with a hot Iron: this with once doing will be a perfect cure.---Not tried, but very likely.

XLII. *For a swelling under the Jaws, when a Horse hath the strangling.*

FOr a swelling of this nature, take nothing else but Bacon-grease and anoint it, which will, if it be hard, suddenly soften it with twice anointing; and when it is full ripe let it out: Some use to burn the swelling with a Candle before they anoint it, and it will cause it to break the sooner; let it out with a point of a Pen-knife, and sometimes there will come out a pint of filth; when it is clean out, put in some white Salt: When any fore is soft, let it out with the point of a Pen-knife; lay it draining as much as you can, with all the advantages you can: If it be a fore in any other place than the Throat, rot it with Bacon-grease, and open it, and put it out, and heal it with the green Ointment mentioned in Recp. XXXVIII. You must have a care of Veins, that you do not cut them. *Proved.*

XLIII. For a Sore.

IF a Horse hath a fore in his side or elsewhere, rot it first with Bacon-grease, then open it in the midst, and let the hole be low enough; that you may put your finger in from the middle of the wound downwards, cut it in the midst, and slash it quite down to the bottom, it will drain the better, and heal the sooner a great deal: Heal it up with the green Ointment, dressing it once a day; and always before you lay your green Ointment to the wound, wash it with the rare water to heal any wound first. This is that I advise you, when you wash a wound with this water, dry it with a clean linnen cloth, before you lay your green Ointment to: This water and green Ointment will heal any wound old or new, if you observe and do as I have directed. If there be any proud flesh in any fore, be the fore in what place it will, scald it with Butter and Salt, and it will eat it off, and help to heal it presently. *Proved.*

XLIV. To make a Horse piss, that is troubled with the *Wind-Cholick, or Obstruction in the Bladder.*

TAKE a quarter of a pound of Casteel-Soap, and scrape it small, then put to it two ounces of Dialthæa, which you may have at the Apothecary's; bray them well together in a Mortar, and then make them up in Balls about the bigness of a Barbar's Wash-ball, and keep them for your use; they will last a year: one Ball crumbled into a pint and a half of strong Beer made scalding-hot, will dissolve the Ball; then let it stand till it be luke-warm, and give it the Beast with a horn; with this he will emp-

ty beyond expectation, as long as any thing is in him : Let him fast an hour after he takes it.

Proved.

XLV. *To cure a Poll-evil, which grows upon the top of the Head.*

YOU may know it when it begins to breed, by its growing bigger than ordinary upon the top of the head : If it be pretty big, take a hot Iron and fear it round about the Poll-evil, till the skin look yellow ; as this Figure doth shew you.



Then take another red hot Iron, made of this fashion ; and make so many holes with this Iron, as the Cross will give you leave, and no further : make all these holes with the point of this last Iron, within the compass of the feared place, as you may see the pricks in the Figure, so many pricks so many holes ; the bigger it is, you may make the more, the lesser the fewer ; these holes being thus made, take a piece of yellow Arsenick as big as a wheat kernel, and put it into one hole, and so do the like to every hole ; then at the same time, lay on every hole over the Arsenick, a piece of black Soap to stop the Arsenick in : after all these, beat some Arsenick fine to powder, and mix as much of the powder with black Soap as contains to half a Walnut, to anoint the place where first the Iron feared it round, but no where else, and within three weeks it will be ready to come out ; all that is within the compass of the round Ring, the Arsenick will eat to the bottom ; if you see it hang but by a little at the bottom, then you may adventure to cut it out, otherwise let it alone three or four Days longer,

longer, and then cut it out close at the bottom : After you have cut it clean out, then wash it with the water that is good to cure any old Ulcer or green wound; and if you see or find with your Instrument, that there is any hole at the bottom, or suspect that there is any dead flesh there, squirt the water aforesaid with a Syringe or Squirt to the bottom, till all the dead flesh be eaten out : this water will do it quickly, which when you see, anoint it with Sallad-oil upon a feather's end once a day, till it be quite whole : if the hole go forwards to his ears, let him stand in at dry meat ; if the hole go backward, let him run abroad at Grasse ; because, by holding down his head, the filthy matter cannot spread further, but must come back to the main Wound ; this Observation will much further the Cure. Again, if this Disease happen in Winter, when no Flies are stirring, anoint it and heal it with Sallad-oil : If this Disease happen in Summer, when the Flies are busy, anoint it then with Train-oil, which you shall have at the Curriers ; if this Disease of a Poll-Evil, or a Fistula, chance to be over-grown with Bags of Bunnies of proud flesh, while you are healing of it, then do nothing but scald it with Butter and Salt, and it will soon remedy that.

XLVI. For a Fistula.

THe mark of the Fistula is after this manner : the Fistula always hangs on either side the top of the Cress, as you may see by this Figure. The same way, and the same means will cure this, as you used to the Poll-evil : with the instrument with a Cross, you must make so many hole as you see pricks within the Fi-



gure, and you must do in every thing as you did in the last: Mark, you must make three holes upon the top of the Wollis, which is the top of the Neck or Crest, which is in the midst of the Fistula, and you must make two holes on either side. *Proved.*

XLVII. *For the Plague, Pestilence, Garget, or Murrain, in Horse or Beast only.*

YOU must not let blood in this Disease: you shall know it by these signs: He will hang down his head, and will gum thick Atter at the Eyes, as big as your finger's end, and much, and will go weakly, staggering, and his head will oftentimes swell very big; and will fall away of his flesh suddenly, and yet feed very well. The Cure is thus: Take as much Diapente as a Hasel-nut, as much Dialphera, as much *London-Treacle*, as much Mithridate, as much Saffron, a handful of Wormwood, an handful of red Sage, Rhubard as much as an Hasel-nut, two Cloves of Garlick; boyl all these together in two pints of good Beer, till it comes to a pint and a half, then give it him luke-warm fasting, and keep him very warm; and the next thing you give him must be a Mash made of ground Malt: let him drink warm water for a week, and sometimes bursten Oats, now and then a little clean sweet Hay; it is his sweating that does the Cure: If one Drink will do no good, give him another three days after to make all sure, it will not make him much sick: half of the proportions of this drink will do wondrous well for a Cow, if she have the like Disease. Not tried, but very probable.

XLVIII. *For a Horse or Cow that is poisoned by licking of Venom, or is over-gorged with Clover-grass, or Turnips, by greedy feeding.*

Either Horse or Cow will swell and flaver very much, and will be so extremely full, as if they were ready to burst, and the skin to crack; if they drink soon after it, so much the worse: but if he be alive when you give him this, it will cure him in a quarter of an hour, for it will work as soon as it is in his body: For the Cure, Take a quarter of a pound of Casteele-Soap, and scrape it thin, and put to it two ounces of Dialphera, which you shall have at the Apothecary's; bray them in a Morter small together, and make them up in Balls as big as a Barber's Wash-ball, and lay them by till you have occasion to use them: One Ball is enough for one Beast to cure this Disease; you must dissolve the Ball in a pint and a half of strong-Beer scalding hot, and give it lukewarm, the hotter the Beer be, the sooner it will dissolve, but if haste require, crumble the Ball in as small as you can, and give it him down in a horn; he will soon be empty with pissing and scouring.

Proved.

XLIX. *For a Horse or Cow that maketh red Water;*

Take three or four Onions, one pound of lean Beef, roasted on the coals till you may beat it to powder, Bole-armoniack as much as the bigness of an Egg, one handful of grey Salt: Chop and beat them all together, and put them all into a quart of strong Beer: Take Ale if you can get it, and give it to the Beast, and presently after it, give her a dishful of

Cheefe-runnets of almost a pint ; do but this once or twice fasting, and let the Beast fast two or three hours after it, and it will cure. *Proved.*

L. For the mad Staggers.

THe signs of this Disease are : He will foam at the mouth white, and will seem dull-headed, and will have at that time a blue Film over his Eyes, and will wander much up and down : be sure to let him bleed on both his Neck-veins, within one or two days after he complains, and in the third furrow in the palate of his mouth, with the point of a Cornet-horn : You may run an Awl into the Gristles of his Nose, something above his Nostrils ; the bleeding at the Mouth and the Nose will ease the pain in his head. The cure is, Take a handful of Rue, by some called Herb-grass, three Cloves of Garlick, a spoonful of Salt, a spoonful of Vinegar, and two spoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* ; bruise all these together well, and then put the one half into one Ear, and the other half into the other Ear, with a little Wool after it ; put the Liquor in with a spoon first, and then the Herbs, and then the Wool ; and then tie or stitch with a Needle and Thread the Ears up very fast with two listing Garters ; then presently fume him at the Nostrils through a Funnel with the stalks and peelings of Garlick, beaten in a Mortar with Mastick or Frankincense mixed together ; of these make Pellets as big as a Bullet, and lay them upon a Chafing-dish of fresh Coals, and the smoke will go up through the Funnel into the Head, and much comfort and cleanse the Brain ; Fume his Head three times a day till you see him mend : At the same time beat Red-weed-seed, which grows in Winter-Corn, by some called Poppy-seed, very

very small, and give as much of the powder at each Nostril as will lie upon a Six-pence, in two half hornfuls of any Beer, do this every morning: Or thus, if you cannot get Poppy-feed, then give him white Poppy-water, which you may likewise have at the Apothecary's, and give at each Nostril a spoonful and a half at each time: it will make him sleep so soundly, that you may walk upon him from the Head to the Tail, and he will not stir; he will lie as if he were dead for a time; his sleeping will mightily refresh him: After you have given it unto him, you will see him, before he fall down, to buckle and fally, till at last he will tumble down. Let him stand in a dark room and warm, where he may see no light; let him have bursten Oats, and Mashcs of ground Malt; let his Drink be cold Water: that which you put in his Ears, must remain there twenty four hours and no longer: Put Wool, Flax, Lint, or a Rag after it; stitching is better than a Garter, for that will make the hair come white. *Proved a rare Cure.*

LI. *For the Water-Farcion.*

IT will come by the Horse's feeding upon low watry Ground, and in Pits where the Grass grows above the Water, for there he will lick the water up as well as the Grass: this kind of feeding will cause Horses sometimes to swell mightily under the Belly and Chaps: To cure it, cause a Smith to make an Iron like a fleam at a Nail's-rod end, then heat it red-hot, and strike it easily but just through the skin in many places upon the swelling, and no where else, and you shall see abundance of yellow, grey oily water come out pouring: this being done, wash it with Chamber-lie and Salt, as hot as you can endure your hand

hand in it, wash it but three or four times, and it is a certain cure. If the swelling be very big, mix with the Chamberlie and Salt as much Bole-armoniack as a Walnut ; boil them together, and wash it.

Proved.

LII. For the Ives.

YOU may see them grow in a Roll betwixt the hinder part of his Jaw-bone and his Neck ; if they get to the roots of his Ears, there is great danger : The cure is, Let blood in both the Neck-veins, then take two spoonfuls of Pepper, as much Hog's-grease, and as much Vinegar, and work them up together, and put them one half into one Ear, and the other into the other Ear, and Woll, Flax, Lint, or Rags, which you have at hand, after it, and stitch up his Ears close with a Needle and Thread for twenty four Hours, and it is a certain cure. *Proved.*

In the time of the cure, let him stand in the House ; give it him fasting, any water cold or warm, any meat, only let him stand in the House three or four days after it.

LIII. For the Wind-Cholick.

IT comes by means of long fasting, and then the Wind gets into the Bag-gut with one end, and then when the Horse comes to meat, he feeds so hungrily that he never chews his meat, and it goes down unchewed and undigested, and stops the Wind in the Gut, that it puts the Horse to abundance of misery. It causeth the slime in the Gut to be so extreemly hot, that the Horse will do nothing but tumble and wallow, and covet much to lie upon his back, with
all

all four Feet right up : The cure is, First, To prick him in the Mouth and let him bleed well, then rub his Mouth well with a handful of Salt, then give him this Drink. Take a pint of Brime and boyl it, but do not skim it, and put thereto a handful of new Hen's-dung and give him it lukewarm, at any time when this Disease happens ; then ride him an hour before he drink, and three hours after it. The Signs : He will stand crimpling with all four together, and lay himself down very easily, and will rather look full than empty : If he be cold in the Mouth, no cure : If he be warm in the mouth, there is hope in four or five hours to abate the pain. Either present Cure, or present Death. *Proved.*

LIV. For a Film in an Horse's Eye.

TAke a piece of the Saltest Beef you can possibly get, dry it in an Oven, and beat it to powder ; take as much of Liquorish-sticks, dry them, and beat them to fine powder, and searse it through a Cloth : blow the powder into his Eye once a day, and it will take off the film in three or four times doing : If a Rheum attend the Eye at the same time, to stop it, dip a little Flax or Hards in some melted Rosin, and lay it in the hole of the Horse's Eye : I was told it would stop any Rheum, but have not tried it.

LV. To cure a Mallender.

First rub it dry with a Cloth, then anoint it with Crown-soap and red Mercury precipitate mixed together : when you have anointed it once, pluck the hairs which grow in it, and upon the edge of it, out ; then dress him three times more ; once in two days
dress

dress it, then anoint it with Sallad-oil, and it is cured.
But always before you anoint it you must rub it dry.
Proved.

LVI. For an Apoplexy, or Palsy.

TO know this Palsy, the Signs are these: It either will take him in the Neck, that he cannot put down his head to the ground, or in the After-parts that he cannot rise; the sinews of his flank will be hard, if you feel them with your hand. The cure is thus: Take six penny-worth of the Oil of *Peter*, and anoint the place grieved with it at one time, and dry it in with a hot Iron: if you anoint the after-part of him, then lay upon him the Litter of a hot reeking Muckhil, and lay a Cloth over that to hold it on, renewing it four times a day: If it be in the Neck, after you have anointed it and dried it in, make a Thumb-band of the longest hottest Dunghil-litter that you can get, and wind it round about his Neck something loose, that he may eat and drink: Let the Thumb-band be so long, that it may go so often about his Neck that it may reach from his Shoulders to his Ears.
Probatum est.

LVII. For a Farcion that lies all over the Body of a Horse.

First, Bleed those Buds that do not die, wash them with the water that you have for any old Ulcer, and this will cure them and kill them: wash them once a day, then take a pottle of running water, and boyl it in two spoonfuls of Hemp-seed beaten to powder, and two handfals of Herb-grace cut small: boyl all these together, till it come to a pint and a half,
and

and give it the Horse fasting ; do this once in three days, or three times in nine days, let him stand in the night before, and not drink ; you may give him three or four hours after it a Mash, or warm water, then Hay. This very drink given to a Cow or Bullock, after letting blood in the neck, will make them thrive exceeding fast, if it be given them at the spring of the year, and then turned out to Grass. If a Cow or Bullock do not thrive, but is lean, scurvy, hide-bound, and her hair stand right up, do but let blood, and give her this Drink, and she will mend presently upon it.

Proved.

LVIII. For a Farcion only in the Neck or Head of a Horse.

First let blood in the Neck-veins, then take two spoonfuls of the juice of Hemlock, and two spoonfuls of the juice of Housleek, and mix them together, and put the one half into one Ear, and the other half into the other Ear ; you must mix two spoonfuls of Sallad-oil with the Housleek and Hemlock, and then put them all together into his Ears. Put a little Wool, Flax or Tow after it, stich up his Ears, and at the end of twenty four hours, unstitch them and take out the stuffing ; give him a Mash two or three hours after, and warm water to drink : You may give him any meat to eat, only wash the Buds with the Water for an old Ulcer, till he be whole.

Proved.

LIX. *A true Medicine to make an Horse scour that is hide-bound, that is molten, that does not thrive nor fill ; and to lay his Coat if it stand right up.*

TF a Horse be molten, give him this scouring Medicine suddenly fasting : If an Horse's skin cleave to his ribs, we say he is hide-bound : and if an Horse's Coat stand right up staring, and will not lie smooth, or if he do not fill well, it is then to be judged the Horse is surfeited, foul, and out of Health. To cure all these at once or twice at the most, and make your Beast thrive gallantly, give him this scouring Medicine, take half an ounce of Aloes and beat it to powder, and put it into a pint of Butter, made afterwards round ; put the Aloes in three or four Balls of Buttet, and roll the Balls in as much of the powder of Jallop as will lie upon a Six-pence : wash down the Balls with a pint and a half of strong Beer lukewarm : Let him fast three or four Hours after, then give him a Mash of bursten Oats, and warm water to drink, for two or three days. Ride or work him moderately, and the Horse will thrive the better.

Proved often.

LX. *To stop a thin Scouring in Cow or Bullock, or any other Creature.*

TAKE a quarter of a pint of Verjuice, and as much Bole-armoniack beaten to powder as a Walnut ; stir it well up and down in the Verjuice, and give it to the Beast.

Proved.

LXI.

LXI. To kill Lice in Cattle.

TAKE a broad woollen Lint, as broad as your hand, that will go round about his neck; then wet the Lint well in Train-Oil, and sew it about the Beast's neck, and the Lice will come to it, and it will kill them if there were never so many: Daub some about the Beast in several Places, and they will come to it, and it will kill them. No Flies in Summer will come near any wound or sore wherewith this is applied, for it will kill them. *Proved.*

LXII. To make Hoofs that are brittle grow quickly, and to make them firm and strong.

TAKE of Garlick seven ounces, Herb-grace three handfuls, of Allum beaten to powder seven ounces, of old Hog's-grease two pounds, of As's dung, or for want of it Cow-dung, an handful; beat and cut them all small, and mix them all together, and boyl them all together well; then with this Ointment stop his fore-feet, between his shoes and the bottom of his feet, and keep it on with a piece of leather, or sole leather of a Shoe: Let it be betwixt his foot and Shoe. And besides, you would do well to anoint the out-sides of his Hoofs all over; do this till you see his brittle Hoofs to grow tough and strong, you will find the effect to be great. *Proved.*

LXIII. To heal a Navel-Gall, Sore back, or a Set-fast.

TAKE a quarter of a pint of Train-oil, and boild in it as much beaten Verdegrease as half a Walnut;

nut ; put it into a pot and keep it for your use : This very Medicine will heal any Navel-Gall, Set-fast, or Sore back suddenly : And no Flies will dare to touch or come near it ; if they do, they die presently. *Proved.*

LXIV. For a Sinew-strain in the fore or after leg.

A Sinew-strain is always upon the Sinews which grow behind on the fore leg, and behind upon the Sinews of the after leg, above the fet-lock joint, upon the back part of the fore leg, and upon the back part of the after leg, much about the ancle bone ; it will be swelled and knotted when it is thus over strained : you may see and discern it by his going, and by the swelling ; if you nip it between your fingers and thumb, he will quinch at it very much. For the Cure : Take Nerve-oil and Turpentine, of each a penny-worth, and mix them together, and lay it on at two or three several times, or more, till it be well ; and always dry it in well with a hot bar of Iron when you lay it on, anoint it two or three days distance ; you must rest him in the time of the Cure.

Probatum est.

LXV. A Scouring-Drink.

WHen you let a horse blood, save the blood with a bowl or dish, and put thereunto a handful of Salt, take the blood as it comes from him, and stir it and the Salt together with your hand, that it may not clot, and give it him again to drink with a Horn fasting : whether it be the blood of another Horse, or his own blood, it matters not much. Give him warm water to drink once.

Proved.

LXVI.

LXVI. *For brittle Hoofs.*

ANoint them with an equal proportion of Dog's-grease, Turpentine, and Tar, all boyled together a little while, and it will make them grow strong and tough; put in the Turpentine but a little before you take it off the fire. *Proved.*

LXVII. *For a Horse that is molten, and breaks out.*

WHen you see Swellings appear like Bags, about the girding place under the Horse's belly, First, anoint it with Bacon-grease once every day till it be rotten; then lance it in one place to make the filth come out, with the point of your Pen-knife; stroke your hand pretty hard upon it, squeeze out all the filth, then anoint the Swelling with Train-Oil all over, and wind a linnen-cloth about a stick's end and dip it in Train-Oil, and with it wash the wound well within. If the Swelling run under the Belly to the Cods-ward, then get a Smith, with a Nail at a rod's end, to beat a piece in the fashion of a Fleme; then heat it red-hot, and strike him just through the skin, in six or eight several places; thereafter as the largeness of the Swelling is, and as your discretion shall guide you; when you have flemmed it, and squeezed it, that all the filth is out, then daub on Chamber-lie and Salt scalding hot, and then anoint it with Train-Oil within and without, Train-Oil will heal it alone; anoint it once a day at first within and without, and once in two or three days as it heals: You must always have a care of any wound that the cold and wind get not in; if it do, it will swell much, and in such a case you must anoint a-

I

bout

bout the wound, all over the Swelling, with the Oil of Populeon, and that will take the Swelling down certainly, be it in what place it will.

Both proved.

LXVIII. *A Scouring-Drink to cleanse his Kidneys, if they be pained.*

First, heat a pint of strong Beer in a Skillet, and scum it, and put in a penny-worth of Tracle-Jean, and give it him luke-warm: it will cleanse his Kidneys and Guts much: three or four hours after it, give him a Mash, warm water the first day, and no longer. Let him stand two or three days.

Probatum est.

LXIX. *For a Fleshy Knot that is moving from the place where it grows.*

Let it grow where it will, if you by feeling upon it with your fingers and thumb feel it moving, and something soft upon the place where it grows; then take the Knot in your hand, and with the point of your Knife, slit a hole in the middle, and cut the Knot out: if it bleed much, sear it with a hot Iron to stanch the blood; then stuff the wound with Hare's wool, or Coney's wool; but Hare's wool is best to stanch blood. The next day take out the wool, and wash it clean with White-wine-Vinegar; then dry the wound with a clean linnen cloth; then heal it with your blue Medicine or green Ointment, which I take to be best; but the blue Medicine is good. Always before you anoint the wound, wash it with the water which you have for an old Ulcer, if it grow rank; if not, you shall not need to do it:

Tie

Tie a rag about it to keep the dirt out. Dress it once a day till it be whole. *Proved.*

LXX. *For a Cow that hath a Garget in her Dug or Udder.*

YOU shall know when she hath the Garget in her Dug, for then she will not give down her milk: For remedy, let her stand in some house or yard the night before you let blood; the next day in the Morning fasting, let her blood on both sides of the neck, then give her this Drink: Take a handful of Higtaper, by some called Mullin, and cut it small; it groweth by the sides of dikes, and in high-ways; it hath a long stem with a broad wolly-leaf; and afterwards boyl it a little in a pint of Beer, and give it her luke-warm fasting: This with once giving, will make her give down her milk freely. *Proved.*

LXXI. *For a Ring-bone.*

A Ring-bone grows just upon the instep, as we used to say, upon the fore-part of the hinder Leg, just about the Hoof, in a hard knob as big as a Walnut: First, The Beast must be cast, or else you must tie up his contrary Leg with a strong Rope, till you strike four or five holes in the Ring-bone, at the very edge of it. Let every hole be an equal distance from other: then take white Mercury or Arsenick beaten to powder, as much as will lie upon your Fleme, and put it into one hole, and as much likewise in the same manner into every hole, binding it on for twenty four hours.

LXXII.

LXXII. *Another for the same.*

TAke quick and unslaked Lime, newly taken from the Kiln, which must be well burned, and the best burned you may know by its lightness; make your Lime into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind upon it a Linnen Cloth made fast about the foot, and so put the Horse into the Water a pretty while; then take him forth and unbind his foot, and he is infallibly cured.

For the burning of the Lime in the Water does kill the Ring-bone even unto the root thereof: with this Receipt I have cured more than an hundred Horses. But when you are thus to dress your Horse, let him be brought close to the Water wherein he is to be ridden, that so soon as you have applyed the Lime unto the Ring-bone, you may presently put him into the Water. *Proved.*

LXXIII. *Observations concerning the ordering of Cattle, as Cows, &c. in the time of feeding, when there is great fullness of Grass: As in the Months of May, June and July.*

THen in those months must be your care to let them blood: For at that Time of the year they never digest their Meat so well as in Winter: And those raw digestions do hinder many inward passages, which causeth bad blood. Which to help, you must let them blood in the beginning of the month of *May*, and let them stand in some close Yard the Night before. And the Night after, give them a handful of Hemp-seed apiece: Now for the Pestilence, Gargil, and Murrain, they are infectious, contagious Diseases,
none

none like them ; they proceed many times from hard driving, heats and colds, hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours, as by drinking when they are hot, or feeding upon grass, foul and corrupted foods, as in low grounds after Floods, when the Grass is unpurged, and the like. And sometimes it cometh from some evil influences of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the Earth : And sometimes from Cattle too : And from divers such like Causes. But however, when these Diseases begin, certain it is that they are most infectious, and if there be not great care taken, they will leave but few alive of a great many, for the one infects the other. These Diseases are easily known, they will hang down their heads, and run Water at the Eyes, will swell on the Lips, and all on one side of the Cheek, and under the Tongue, and sometimes at the roots of the Ears : the cure is, To separate the sound from the sick, a good distance from the Air where the Sick breath, then let them blood on the Neck-veins, and give every one a spoonful of Diapente in a pint of Verjuice. If you cannot get Diapente, take a spoonful of Tracle-jean, and give it in a pint of Verjuice : Thus give them a good quantity of old Urine, and a handful of new Hen's-dung ; stir the Urine and Hen's-dung well together, and give it to the Beast lukewarm, keep him in the House a Week after : These, for Cows or Bullocks, be prime Receipts. *Proved.*

LXXIV. *For a Bite, Blow, or Film in the Eye.*

TAKE as much white Copperas as the bigness of half a Walnut, and beat it very fine, the same quantity of Verdegrease beaten to powder : Bray these two well together upon an Iron Spade, or in a

Mortar, then mix them with as much fresh Butter as a Walnut; put into the Eye as much of this as the bigness of a Pea once a day, until it be well and clear. *Proved.*

LXXV. *A precious Ointment for an Horse's Eye, either for Bite, Blow, or Film.*

GO to the Apothecary's, and buy the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, it is of a blue colour, heat it red hot, then take it out and quench it presently in a pint and a half of White-wine, and so heat it, and quench it as afore, twelve times one after another; then add unto the Wine half so much of the Juice of Housleek, well stamped and strained, and stir them up well together: dip a feather in this Water, and dress it two or three times a day, till the sight be recovered. *Proved.*

LXXVI. *Agallant Scouring to make a Beast thrive Winter or Summer.*

TAKE a handful of Groundsel, called by some Sertion, half a handful of red Sage, half a handful of dried or green Wormwood stript; you must shred them all small, and boyl them in a pint and a half of strong Beer; and when it comes off the fire, put in a piece of Butter, as big as an Egg; You may put in as much of the Powder of Mechoacan as will lie upon a Shilling at three or four times. I know it purgeth slime and molten Grease in lumps, and works very kindly; give him warm water to drink, Evening and Morning for three or four days after: A Mash of Malt once a day, or once in two days, if your Horse do not fill well, and that his Coat stand right up staring, or be hide-bound, give him this. *Proved.*

LXXVII.

LXXVII.

IF you let blood in the Neck or Temple-vein, you must always cord the Horse: Take this for a Rule.

LXXVIII. For a Strangling in the Spring.

TAKE a handful of Elder buds, as much of dried Wormwood, half an handful of Mercury, as much of Tansey: cut these small, and boyl them in a pint of strong Beer, and it will serve for three Drinks, three days distance between Drink and Drink. Give it him fasting in Mornings, give a Mash three hours after, warm water for a day or two: let him stand in all the while. If he be swelled between the Jaws, anoint it with Bacon-grease once in two or three days, till it be rotted, and then let it out, and heal it with your healing Salves. *Proved.*

LXXIX. To kill Lice in Horses or Cows.

TAKE two penny-worth of Quick-silver, and work it well with fasting-spittle upon the palm of your hand till the Quick-silver be killed: then take the Whites of two Eggs and bray them with the Quick-silver and spittle, till they be as an Ointment; spread these upon a Lint that will go round about the Beast's neck, let it be as broad as your fingers; first cut away the hair, and then tie your Lint round about, and sew it up; they will come to it, and it will kill abundance of them: And in several places about the Beast daub on some Train-oil.

LXXX.

LXXX. *To make a Horse Stale or Pifs.*

TAKE as much Casteel-Soap as a Walnut, boyl it in a pint of strong Beer a little while, and give it him luke-warm, it will make him pifs. *Proved.*

LXXXI. *For an inward Bruise with any Fume or Stub.*

TAKE a pint and a half of strong Beer, and one ounce of Bole-armoniack, and boyl them a little together, and give it him with a Horn luke-warm. It is very good for an inward bruise of a Beast. The greasy sort is best. *Proved.*

LXXXII. *For a Horse that hath rent his flesh about the Belly, or elsewhere, or for any new Wound.*

TAKE a pint of White-wine-Vinegar the sharpest you can get, boyl in it half a quarter of a pound of Bole-armoniack; after it hath boyled a little, and when it comes off the fire, put into it a little piece of Butter, and bathe the place grieved once in two days, and in two or three times dressing it will cure. This is a plain and easie Cure.

LXXXIII. *For an old Cold with a Cough.*

TAKE as much fresh or salt Butter as an Egg, and make it hollow as a Pye, and put as much Tar into it as a Walnut; then close up the Ball very round, and roll it in the seeds and strippings of Wormwood cut small; To make two Balls of the Butter and Tar is better; give him this in a pint and a half of strong Beer in the Morning fasting, having stood in the night before, keep him in the house
three

three or four days after, give him warm water, the cold just taken off it, for two days ; the water must be no warmer at any time : If you see he doth not fill well, and hath left his coughing, then four or five days after give him the same again, and order him as before : When you have given him this, ride him a hand-gallop for three or four miles, till he sweat well ; but a mile before you come at home, ride him very softly to cool him : Set him up warm, litter him well, clothe him with a couple of warm cloths, tie him up to the Rack upon the Bit for three or four hours, if it be five or six hours it matters not ; when you unbit him give a Mash first, or warm water first ; then clean Hay, and take off one of his Cloths ; after one or two days you may work him, so you do it moderately : This is not so good for a new Cold as for an old Cold.

Proved.

LXXXIV. For a Strangling in the Guts : the Cough of the Lungs : for clearing the Pipes, and giving much Breath.

IF you be to run your Horse for a wager, give him two of these Balls a week before. I make them thus ; Take as much of fresh or salt Butter as the bigness of an Egg and an half, part it in the midst as near as you can, hollow it in the fashion of a Pye, mix and bray together with your Butter half an ounce of Anniseeds, beaten to powder, then make a Pye of your Butter and Anniseeds thus mixed, and put into it three quarters of a spoonful of Syrrup of Horehound into each Ball, and close up the Ball close that the Syrrup may not come out : Make your Balls no bigger than a Barber's Wash-ball, or but a little bigger if you do ; for it is not good to give Balls too big

big: then warm a pint and a half of strong Beer luke-warm, and fill the Horn with Beer, and before you put it in, put in one of the Balls, having pull'd out his tongue with your left hand before. When his tongue is out, put the Balls into his mouth as far as you can, then hasten two Hornfulls of Beer to wash it down; do the like with the next Ball as you did with the first: then take his back, and ride him for three or four miles a hand-gallop, till he sweat well, for this reason: Because the Diseases, in this Receipt, as they come with a heat, so the speediest and best remedy is to drive them away with a heat. The second reason is, That a Drink will take no more place in a Horse for heats and colds, than to give a Horse a Drink, and walk him about the Yard. Therefore for Diseases of this nature, ride him till he sweat soundly: a mile before you come at home, ride him but a foot-pace, that he may be set up something cool; then tie him up to the Rack, cover him with two Cloths, stuff him and litter him very warm, cover his head and body to keep him from the cold; let him stand four or five hours before he eat or drink; then when you unbit him, give him a Mash, or some water luke-warm, or some clean Hay, and take off one Cloth, and keep him warm. If this will not do, a week after give him the same again; and give him warm water but two days after it, and then cold water, a week before your Horse goes to grass, give it three or four times a year, and it will keep your Horse in gallant health; it will fat a Horse; It will make him sick, but fear nothing: but if you give your Horse too much at a time, that it makes him extraordinary sick, give him a pint of Milk as it comes from the Cow, or heat the Milk lukewarm. Proved many times. *This is a rare Receipt.*

LXXXV. *To cure the Kernels under the Horse's throat cheaply and suddenly.*

First Sear the Kernels with a Candle; then take of fresh or salt Butter, and lay a piece upon a red piece of cloth, and rub it well in, and in a fortnights time the Knot will be quite gone: and if his Nose run, it will stop when the Kernels are gone; anoint the Knots once a day for a week in the time of his Cure. If it be in Summer, let him run out, and in Winter stand in. *Proved.*

LXXXVI *For a Cough of the Lungs.*

TO know this, the Horse will cough hollowly and gruntingly, he will hang down his head when he coughs; his flanks will beat, he will fetch his breath short. For remedy, let him stand in the night before; the next day in the Morning fasting, give him a spoonful of the Syrup of Horehound, and a spoonful of the Flour of Brimstone, and put these into a pint and a half of strong Beer heated lukewarm, and give it him fasting: take him and ride him there or four miles presently upon it, till he sweat well: ride but a foot-pace within a mile of home; be careful to set him up warm: Litter and clothe him warm: Let him stand in not above two or three nights, if it be in Summer: after that turn him out from ten a Clock to three a Clock, for two or three days, and then turn him out for altogether: the more moderate you work him, the better he will thrive: It will take away his Cough, clear his Pipes, and make him thrive much after it. If there be a white, thick, clayey water near, let him drink there,

there, it is a warmer and more fatening water than any other ; give warm Water not above twice : This drink will clear his Pipes, and drive it from his Lungs : You may put in as much of the powder of Macoachan, as will lie upon a shilling at three times.
Proved.

LXXXVII. *For a broken winded Horse.*

TAKE Boar's dung and dry it to powder, and put a spoonful of it into two pints of Milk as it comes from the Cow, or otherwise heated luke-warm, and give it him. If you see that this proportion will not make him sick the first time you give it, then give him two spoonfuls more of the powder, and in four or five times giving, it will perfectly cure. This drink must be given every third day. A spoonful of the powder of a Hedge-hog (by some called an Urchin) doth infinitely help in this case. *Proved.*

LXXXVIII. *For a Cold in a Beast either in Winter or Summer.*

TAKE an Egg-shell full of Tar, half an ounce of Red-stone Sugar, half an ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, half an ounce of Tobacco beaten, half an ounce of Liquorish beaten very small, two ounces of Brimstone beaten small, a quarter of a handful of Herb-grace cut small ; after that these things are thus beaten and stirred up together, make them up into three Balls of a like bigness, then put two pints of strong Beer luke-warm ; and the first hornful of Beer that you give him put a Ball into it ; and do so likewise to the second and third : And then give him the remainder of the Beer. Let him not drink
for

for four or five hours after : give him a Mash, and afterwards Hay to eat ; Let him stand in for three or four nights if it be in Summer, after the first day's giving ; work him every day moderately, and the Beast will thrive the better. If once will not take away his Cough, and cause him to belly, give him another ; keep him warm, and it is a Cure. *Proved.*

LXXXIX. For the Scratches.

They are upon the after-heels of a Horse in the Pastern and above. For remedy, take two penny-worth of black Soap, as much as an Egg of the newest Hen's-dung as you can get, Oister-shells put into hot Embers five or six ; they must be put in over night, and raked up so, that they may be well dried by the Morning ; then beat them to powder, and bray them all together like an Ointment, and apply it to the Horse's fore heels every Morning and Evening ; the Horse must not come into the water till you see he is cured. Always rub his heels very clean before you rub in the Ointment, and you shall find it a certain Cure in two or three times dressing.

XC. For the Scratches.

Over night let his heels and legs be bathed well in Beef-broth ; the next Morning rub his legs clean, and then apply this Ointment to heal it. Take two penny-worth of Gilts-grease, two penny-worth of Speck-Oil, at the Curryer's made of shreds and cuttings of Leather, two penny-worth of Verdegrease beaten small, two penny-worth of Train-Oil : put all these into a Pipkin, and set it on the Coals to melt, but stir them till they be melted ; then once a
day

day anoint him with this Ointment, till his Heels be well, which will be whole very suddenly : Chase it, and rub it in with your hand very well, let him come in no water nor dirt till he be whole : When Horses have been so swelled, crannied and stiff, that they could not go, but fall down, this hath cured them.

XCI. *Another for the same.*

IF at any time a Horse's Leg swell, but especially in the Month of *March*, ride him into a River where the water runs swift, up to the mid-leg, and there let him stand not above a quarter of an hour ; then when you set him up in the Stable, take a wisp and a pail of water, and dash the water against his Legs, till they be clean. This is a Cure for swelled Legs in a very short time, that is, when they are not broken out, but only swelled. *Proved.*

XCII. *For foot-ffoundering.*

THat foot which is foundred, he will set before the other. For remedy, pare him down to the quick, if he bleed it matters not ; then set on his Shoe very hollow ; then take Flax or Tow, and make a pretty thick Cake thereof, and spread Venice-Turpentine thereon a good thickness ; then lay it all over the bottom of the Hoof, and put a piece of the upper-leather of a shoe to keep it in ; at three days end, lay on a new Plaister as before. If his Foot grow again, pare him to the quick again, and every third day lay on a new Plaister, till you see him go better : he must run abroad in low grounds ; this Plaister will draw down the humours exceedingly

ly. Continue thus doing, and if he have not been foundered too long, this will cure him in a month or very little more, perfectly. To further the cure, you may let him blood at the Toes; nevertheless the place should not be dirty that he goes in.

Proved.

XCIII. For the Garget in the throat of a Cow.

IF you have an Ox, or Cow, or Bullock, that hath the Garget in the Throat, it comes for want of Water; it will cause a swelling under the sides. The remedy is, first to cast the Beast, then cut the skin through in the midst of the swelling, and flea the skin from the flesh so far as any swelling goes: then take of the whitest Wood-ashes that you can get, sifted fine; mix them with some mouldy, stale, old Piss; stir them well together, and wash the sore therewith.

Proved.

XCIV. Another for a Garget at the root of the Tongue of a Cow.

A Garget at the root of the Tongue, is a certain swelling under the root of the Tongue, which causeth his head and face to swell also, and to froth at the mouth; he will then forsake his meat, with often gulping in his throat. The remedy is, first, cast him in soft straw, from bruising his body; then take his Tongue in your hand and pull it out as far as you can, and with the point of a sharp Pen-knife slit down the middle Vein an inch, right under the Tongue, and there will come forth black blood and water, which comes from the Gall; then rub the place with

with Salt and Vinegar mingled together, and it will cure. *Proved.*

XCv. For the Garget in the Guts of a Cow or Bullock.

THe signs are these: The Beast will run at the eyes, drivel and slaver at the mouth, with a sad heavy countenance. For remedy, take an Egg-shell full of Tar, and put it down her Throat; then take two handfuls of Salt, and put it into a pint of Verjuice, and put it down the Beast's Throat with a Horn, then drive her to and fro till she dung: Keep her fasting four hours after. *Proved.*

XCvi. For the over-flowing of the Gall, in a Cow or Bullock.

THe signs are, extraordinary foulness of the Body, and slavering at the mouth. The remedy; Take an Egg-shell full of Tar, and put it down her Throat, having before a pint of Verjuice of Vinegar, and a penny-worth of Cloves beaten; boil the Verjuice and Cloves together, and when you take it off the fire, put in two good handfuls of Salt, and give it her luke-warm with a Horn immediately after the Egg-shell full of Tar, and drive her to and fro. *Proved.*

XCvii. For a Horse or Cow that makes red Water.

Take a Red-Herring with a hard Row, and cut it as small as you can, and put it into a quart of strong Beer, and give the Beast it luke-warm, and in twice giving it is a cure. *Proved.*

XCviii.

XCVIII. For a Horse that is Back-swankt, or for a Strain in the Kidneys, being over burthened in the hinder part, or in Race-running, or by being over-strained in the Back.

TAKE a fat hot Sheep's-skin, just as it comes from the back of the Sheep as soon as she is kill'd; mix four penny-worth of Nerve-Oil, and four penny-worth of Turpentine well together, and besmear or anoint the inside of the Sheep's skin all over, and clap it to the place of the back where the grief lies, which commonly is in the Navel-place of the Back-bone: In that part of the Back-bone, is a Horse mostly swankt off. When you have thus laid it along his Back-bone, make a Crupper to go under his Tail to keep it on, and a Brest-plate before, and fasten them together, to girt it upon him for a month till his back be knit and strengthened. *Proved.*

Cure for the Botz.

Take half pint of vinegar

Half pint of soft soap

Half pint of gin

Half pint of molasses

*Shake them well together
Give it to the horse while foaming
in five minutes he will be free
from pain*

K

Here

Certain Cure Nov 21st 1846

Here followeth Nathaniel Shaw's Receipts, which are all approved things. And he is accounted as able a Farrier as any in London. I have both proved myself, and seen him prove most of them, both inward and outward; and although the former Receipts in this Book will do much good, yet these go beyond them in many Things, both for cheapness and readiness of the Cure. I shall begin with a Disease in the Head, called the Canker.

C. For a Canker in the Head.

A Canker is a Disease in the head, and sometimes will set upon the eyes, and sometimes in the nostrils: you shall know it by his rawness, and it will run a yellow water. For remedy, take half a pint of Sallad-oil, one ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, three ounces of Burgundy-Pitch, and one penny-worth of Verdegrease beaten fine; put all but the Verdegrease into a Pipkin, and let them boyl together a pretty while: then take it off the fire, and put in the Verdegrease, and let them all boyl together to a salve; but if you have not a great care, the Verdegrease will make all boyl over; to prevent which, always have another Pipkin standing by in readiness, that if it boyl over you may put some into that; then put them together again, and set them upon warm embers, and let it gently boyl till you see it come to a Salve, being neither too hard nor too soft; you must stir it all the while it boyls, then take it off, and keep it for your use: If you use this Medicine for a Canker in the Nostrils, first tie a rag about a stick's end, and dip it in some White-wine-vinegar and some Salt,

Salt, and run it up his Nostrils to do off all the scales: When you have washed it clean, take a feather, and if it be not long enough tie two together, and dip it in the cold Salve, and run it up his Nostrils but once a day: If it be a Canker in the head, face, or eyes, take a little Tow, and rub the Canker till it bleed, and when it leaveth bleeding, anoint it with a feather dipt in the aforesaid Salve, and strew some Wheat-bran upon the Salve, it will hold on the better: Dress it once a day till you see it heal, and then once in two or three days, whilst it heals up, Observe this Rule in all outward cures, for it is needful: let him stand in all the time of the Cure.

Proved.

CI. *For a dry scurvy Mange, although it be from the Head to the Tail, of Horse, Cow, Dog, or anything else.*

First, scrape off all the Scurf with an old Curry-comb or piece of knife; then take two ounces of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer: mix them together, and shake them well in a Glass-vial; then anoint the Horse where he is peel'd and mangy: a week after, dress him again if you see any mattery running places, else not: tie him up with a strong halter, till it hath done working, for it will smart terribly: When you have killed the Mange, to make the hair come again, wash it two or three times with a little strong Beer now and then, and it will make the hair come quickly and thick. Let the Beast stand in at dry meat the time of the Cure. This is a rare Receipt.

Proved.

CII. *For a blow or any other mischance, which causeth a swelling about the head, face, jaws or chaps.*

First, let blood in the Neck-vein, on the side the head swells; if he swells on both sides, let him blood on both sides; Then give him this Drink to prevent a Farcy; take an ounce of Turmerick, and an ounce of Anniseeds, of Red-sage, Wormwood, Herb-grace, of all three but a handful; cut them small, and put all into a quart of strong Beer, and give it the Beast cold, for they are hot of themselves, fasting in a morning, and let him fast four or five hours after it; give him warm water to drink but for once: so soon as you have given him his Drink, apply this Charge hot with a flat stick, daub on the Swelling a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vitæ* or Brandy-wine, which is the Spirit of *Aqua vitæ*, but Brandy is best, mixed with a penny-worth of Crown-Soap, according to the bigness or smallness of the swelling; make a quantity of these two things which you apply as a Charge; this charge of these two things, will take down any swelling old or new whatsoever. Soak it in with a red-hot Iron; apply it but once, it will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days; it will sink it quite flat, or break it. *Proved.*

CIII. *For a Navel-Gall.*

TAke Brandy-wine cold, and put it on with your hand, or with a rag, it will take it down in a few times dressing, if the skin be not broken.

Proved.

CIV.

CIV. For hard Kernels under the Throat.

Mix Soap and Brandy-wine together, and apply it to the Kernels hot : then heat it in with a hot Iron ; it will either sink them flat, or break them.
Proved.

CV. For a new Sinew-strain.

Apply Soap and Brandy once hot, and heat them in with a hot Iron ; but first you must clip the hair away in the Pastern right over the Shackle-veins, and then let blood on both the Shackle-veins, and then apply the Charge ; letting blood will much further the Cure. Let the Sinew-strain be before or behind, you must let blood if you will have a speedy Cure. Letting blood thus, and applying the Charge, will take his lameness away in eight-and-forty hours, with once doing at the most. Do not ride him in four or five days after you have laid on this charge. This Soap and Brandy, heated well in with a hot Iron, will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days ; and when you see the scurf to rise, anoint it with Trotters Oil, which is made of Sheeps feet boiled : anoint it once in two days, to strengthen the Sinews, till he go well ; you may ride him in four or five days, and for four or five days, or a week, keep him out of the water, after you have applied the Charge, and it will be a perfect Cure.
Proved.

CVI. *For an old Sinew-strain that is swelled and hard on fore or after-legs.*

First, clip away the hair right over the Shackle-veins on the Pastern, and you will see to strike the Shackle-vein the better : when it hath bled, apply two ounces of the Oil of Turpentine, mixed with two ounces of strong Beer, and put them into a Glass-vial, and shake them well together : bathe most of it in with your hand upon the Vein or swelling, and three or four days after it hath done swelling, and begins to be scurfy, lay a Charge of Soap and Brandy ; heat it well in with a hot Iron, and it will take it quite down in a week or a fortnight's time, you may ride him in five or six days : When you see the Charge to scurf and peel, you may anoint it with Oil of Trotters once or twice.

Proved very certain.

CVII. *For any old, hard and crusty Knobs, or swellings, that have been a long time, let them be never so hard. Do thus :*

First, anoint it with an ounce and a half of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer mixed together, and put it in a Glass, and well shaken together, and bathed in with your hand ; and three or four days after, the charge of Soap and Brandy, applied and well heated in with a hot Iron ; and four or five days after, you may ride him where you please, it will take it quite down. *Proved.*

CVIII.

CVIII. *For old broken Knees much swelled and hard, that have been long healed up.*

First, mix an ounce and a half of the Oil of Turpentine, and the like quantity of strong Beer, shaking them in a Glass together; then bathe it in with your hand upon the swelled Knee: two or three days after, apply the charge of Crown-soap and Brandy hot, and let it lie on till it come off of its own accord; it will much lessen, if it do not take it quite down; let him stand in: The Oil of Worms is a great mollifier of a hard and bony part, and hard swellings. *Proved.*

CIX. *For a Strain in the Pastern, Back or Sinews.*

A Charge of Crown-Soap and Brandy-wine applied hot, and heated well in with a hot Iron, is marvellous good: keep him out of the Water for a week after, 'till you see him go well. This Soap and Brandy-wine is an absolute cure for a Strain newly taken, or new swelling, or soft swelling; but if it be old done, and the swelling as hard as a bone, then you must first anoint it with the Oil of Turpentine and Beer, and two or three days after apply the charge of Soap and Brandy, and it will take it quite down. *Proved.*

CX. *How to boil the Charge of Soap and Brandy to a Salve.*

THis Soap and Brandy, when you are to boil them, let them boil till they come to a white Salve, then lay it on hot with a flat stick, always when you

dress a Beast, this is how to boyl it, and make the Charge: It will make a Horse swell much, but within three or four days after it hath taken its course, it will fall as flat as may be. For all these lamenesses, the Beast must stand in for four or five days; you need not take above a quarter of a pint of Brandy, and a penny-worth of Crown-soap. For a Horse that is cast in a Ditch, and is much swelled and bruised about the Head and Body with beating of himself; Let Blood in this case, first in those Veins where you see most cause, and let him bleed as discretion shall teach you, and then apply the Charge of Crown-soap and Brandy-wine, hot, all over the swelling with a flat stick, and heat it well in with a hot Iron, and let him stand in the house the time of his cure, and you shall find it to be a very perfect and ready cure.

Proved.

CXI. For a swelling that comes by reason of wind or cold getting into the Wound; how to take it away, whether it be in the Head or any part of the Body.

IF the swelling in the Head cause a thick Film over the Eyes, then follow the directions under-written: If the swelling comes by reason of wind or cold getting into the wound, to take out the heat and rankness of the Swelling, you must anoint it all over with an ounce of the Ointment of Populeon, or more if the swelling be great; anoint it twice a day at first, and as it falls, fewer times will serve; in the mean time do nothing to the wound, till the Swelling be almost gone: when the Swelling is almost gone or down, wash the wound with Chamber-lie and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt, and heal it up with your healing Salves. If he get a wound in his face
or

or head, and the wind get in and cause it to swell, when you have taken away the swelling by anointing it with this Populeon, it may be you shall see your beast to have lost his sight, by reason of some thick Film that hath covered his Eyes. For remedy, when you have first taken down the swelling, do thus: Slit a little hole upon the bone of the cheek with a sharp pointed Pen-knife, and then put in your Cornet-horn, and work up the point thereof between the skin and the flesh, close up to the Eye: then take a little bit of new Canvass, and cut it three-square, and roll it up round the length of your Thumb; mix some Salt and fresh Butter together, and strew some Salt upon the Butter, although the Butter be Salt, and spread it on both sides the Canvass; then roll it up round, and thrust it up into the hole, and there let it be: over it lay a little piece of Canvass, with some Burgundy Pitch spread upon it, to keep out the cold and wind, and it will draw and drain the Eye very clean and clear. This being done, put a little piece of fresh Butter, with a corn or two of Salt into the Eye; and put in a piece of Butter into the hollow hole above the Eye: anoint and rub it well in, that it may drain down the Eye: For a blow with a Cudgel, Whip, Stick, or a Haw in the Eye, though you think the Horse will lose it, this course taken, will remedy it in a short time.

Let Blood in the Temple-vein for a hot rheum; and likewise when a Horse's Eye-sight fails with hard riding or much straining; nevertheless, you must strike the same cross the Vein, and then the rheum will stop, and the Vein will knit up of itself; this is a great means to stop a hot rheum that comes down to a Horse's Eye: when you let a Horse blood on this Vein at any time, you must cord him about the Neck,

Neck, and when he hath bled as much as you think good, to keep the cold and wind out of the Vein, you would do well to Pitch and flock it: for a hot rheum, hard riding, or over-much straining, give this drink fasting, to clear the Stomach, and cleanse the Blood and Lights (*viz.*) one ounce of Turmerick, half a quarter of *Aqua vitæ* or brandy, two or three spoonfuls of White-wine-vinegar, a quart of the best Beer, give it luke-warm: but if there be a kind of white glass in his sight, then it can be no cure.

Likewise, if you have a young Horse that you think will be Moon-blind, then you must take up the Temple-vein in the wane of the Moon, doing with your Cornet-horn as before you were taught, and put a piece of Butter in his Eye, and a piece in the hole of his Eye: If it be a hot rheum, his Eye will water and look red below the Eye, let him come into the cold wind as little as you can: If it be a Film, if it be thick, white, blue, though it hath been for half a year, then do as ye were just directed in this Receipt, and no otherwise.

Proved.

CXII. *For a hot Inflammation or soft swelling, that is new done, whether broken or not broken.*

A Noint it with the Oil of Populeon, and rub it in cold with your hand once a day, or twice at the most, till it be down.

Proved.

CXIII. *For a Bruise or Bite upon the Cods of an Horse, that cause them to swell much.*

First, bathe them well in warm Whey or Milk, but Whey is best, let it be as hot as the Horse can endure it: bathe it for three or four days together; then

then make a Bag to put his Cods therein to keep them warm, anoint his Cods with the Oil of Populeon cold, once or twice a day, till you see the swelling of his Cods abate; which when you see, apply the Charge of Crown-soap and Brandy-wine, to take down the rest of the swelling, and to knit the Veins and strings of his Cods again: Lay it on hot, and heat it well in, three or four days after ride him into a River, if you can, or Pit, up to the belly, and you shall see it fall in a short time. If the Cods be swell'd much, and it have been long done, and is hard, then do not meddle with it. *Proved.*

CXIV. *To keep in your Medicine, and keep out the wind.*

OVer your Medicine, lay a Plaister of Burgundy-Pitch, and it will keep in your Medicine and keep out the wind, whilst you take down the swelling with the Oil of Populeon: but *Culpepper* saith, that the Ointment of Populeon is better.

CXV. *Directions.*

IF at any time a Horse come to you with swelled Legs, and that hath been poisoned with other Farriers Medicines: First, before you apply any thing of your own to it, bathe his Leg or Legs with Whey as hot as he can endure it, to wash off the Poison of their Medicines, and to make his Legs clean. Whey will not take off the hair if it be not off before, it will cool gallantly, it is better than Milk: But if you cannot get Whey, then take Milk; after you have thus bathed it in warm Whey or Milk, you may fall to work according to your judgment, as it is in hardness or softness: This Book will tell

tell you, whether you shall take it away by Drinks or Ointments, or by both : Look the Receipts for a dry Surfeit, and the Receipt for a Pocky Farcion Horſe : Look the following Receipts for a dry Surfeit, and there you ſhall ſee the purge of Aloes to be given inwardly, and other things to be applied outwardly to the hard ſwelling : If it be a ſurfeit that comes down out of the body, and falls into the Legs before or behind, and breaks, and runs moiſt, watry, or attery ſtinking filthy matter, then look the following Receipts for a foul, rank, Pocky Farcion Horſe, and give him the firſt Drink there mentioned at the beginning of the Receipt ; one or two of thoſe drinks will dry up the moiſt humours that fall out of his Body into his legs. *Note*, That where the filth breaks out of the Chaps, if the Crannies be very great, and if you ſee that the filthy matter that comes out of thoſe Crannies is like to rot the Sinews of the legs, then uſe the following Receipt, which is, for Pains and Scratches, made of Honey, Pepper, and Garlick. The Drink given inwardly, and this Receipt applied outwardly to the Crannies of his legs, are incomparable : for the drink at once or twice giving will dry up the humours in his body, although never ſo many or ſo violent, and the Salve will heal up his Legs ſuddenly and to purpoſe. This is enough to direct you, eſpecially for dry Surfeits that fall out of the body into the Legs, and there ſettle and become very hard : And likewise for ſurfeits that fall out of his Body, and break, ſtink, and run watry, yellow, thick, and ſometimes thin, mattery filth in the Legs : if after you have made a Cure of theſe, and ſee your Horſe gaunt, and doth not fill well, then give him the Purge of Aloes to ſcour and cleanſe him ; and after that your Cordial, White-wine and
Honey,

Honey, all mentioned in the following Receipts in this book, which is for a dry Surfeit. And when a Horse's cods are subject to swell oft, give him this Purge of Aloes that is for a dry Surfeit, which is when the Grease is melted, and afterwards settled and dried in his body. It is good for a Horse that is gaunt and will not fill, and we say is gut-foundred, and his hair stands right up. The Cordial of White-wine and Honey is marvellous good to beget and continue a stomach to his meat, being given after his Purge; as you are fully directed in the Receipt for a Horse that is swelled in his Cods, and that hath a dry Surfeit, and runs at the nose. I say, in the following Receipts you shall there find them all together in order.

CXVI. For a Shoulder-strain.

First, tie up his sound leg very sure with a Liff or Garget, then walk or drive him on three legs, that he may lay the weight of his body upon the lame leg, till he begin to sweat at the ears and cods with pain; this is, because you may see the Plait-vein the plainer appear; then let down his lame leg, and you shall see the vein yet plainer than you could when his leg was tied up: If you cannot see the vein plain enough when his leg stands upon the ground, then heat but a little water, and clap it on with your hand upon the vein, and then thou shall certainly see the vein apper a great deal bigger, that you may let it blood: then when you see the blood is come into the Plait-vein, and that the vein is plain enough to see and feel, tie up his lame leg again, and let him blood in the Plait-vein, on that side the bottom of his Chest his lame leg is on: let him bleed a quart
or

or two, or more ; the greater the lameness is, the more let him bleed : after he hath bled about a quart upon the ground, presently put into a bowl a good handful of Salt, and let him bleed a quart or more into that Salt : you must stir the Salt and blood all together, all the while he bleeds into the bowl, because it may not clot ; then set the Blood and Salt by, and stop the Plait-vein with a piece of Lead, that may nip the mouth of the vein together again, that it may not bleed : You must have in readiness an ounce or an ounce and a half of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer ; put them both into a Glass-vial, and shake them well together : When you have thus shaken the Oil and Beer together, bathe it well in with your hand about his breast, and all his shoulder over, and the bottom of his breast, between his legs, and half way down to his knees ; bathe it and clap it well in with your hand ; presently after, take the blood and salt, and bathe and clap that upon the former ; then set him up into the Stable to meat, and with a Lift or Garter, tie both his fore-legs together as close as you can, a Girt or Sirsingle will serve to tie his legs. The next day untie his fore-legs, take him out and walk him, and if you see he go any thing well, take his back and ride him gently a Mile, and set him up again, and tie his fore-feet again as close as you did before : If he go not well the first day, do but walk him the second day, and not ride him ; and the third day after his first dressing, do not only tie his legs, but flat a stick on both sides, in the fashion of a wedge, about the breadth of a six-pence ; take it and drive it in between the toes of his shoes, and the toe of his foot fast, so that it may not come out, and always whilst he stands still in the Stable, tie his legs close, and peg him

him with a wedge; and when you walk or ride him abroad, untie his legs and take out the wedge: do this every night and day till he grow sound, which will be within two or three days, if it be a Strain newly taken: To let blood once, and anoint it once with the Oil of Turpentine and Beer, and once with the blood and Salt, is enough, with the help of tying his legs together, and driving in a wooden wedge, as you were before directed. For a wrench in the shoulder, or when a Horse hath pulled his shoulder out of his place, and the shoulder is fallen the breadth of a man's hand or more, or if he be splayed on the shoulder, do nothing contrary to what you were directed before in this Receipt, either for matter or manner; for if it be but lately done, it is as speedy a Cure for the one as for the other. And if you do as you are here directed, I am perswaded there is not a better or speedier way to be taken under the Sun. I cannot give praises sufficient to the worth of it.

Proved in all.

CXVII. For an old Strain in the Shoulder.

THe fore-going direction in the last Receipt, is most incomparably certain, for an old hurt in the shoulder, and is for this as absolute a cure in one week's time as any under the Sun.

Proved.

CXVIII. For the Hurle-bone out of Joint, or a little miscarried.

THis Hurle-bone is much about the midst of the Buttock, and is very apt to go out of the socket with a slip or strain. The Oil of Turpentine and Beer is marvellous good, used as you were before directed,

rected for a Horſe that has gotten a miſchance in the Hurle-bone : After you have ſhaked them together in the Glaſs, take of it, and as near as you can, pour a little of it right over the ſocket of the Hurle-bone, the breadth of the palm of your hand, and rub it in with your hand. It will make the ſkin to purſe up and be very ſore, and you muſt anoint him on the brawn and thick part of the inſide of the thigh, and ſo down to the ſtifle, and anoint him down to the very----

In the time of the Cure, drive in a wooden wedge in the contrary foot between the toe and the ſhoe, and ſo let him ſtand day and night : If you ſee your Horſe mend and go better, you may then ride him every day, ſo as when you ſet him into the Stable, you peg him with a wooden wedge : this courſe being taken, will in a very few days cure him, and make him go compleat. *Proved.*

CXIX. For a ſtifle in the ſtiſling-bone.

IF your Horſe be ſtified, that you ſee the ſtiſling-bone is out of its place : Then firſt, ſwim him in a Mill-pool for half an hour, till he ſweat behind his ears ; in which time or before, the bone will be in his place again : then lead him gently home clothed, and keep him in the Stable warm ; as ſoon as he comes into the Stable, peg him on the contrary foot behind, all the time of his cure whiſt he ſtands ſtill in the houſe ; and as ſoon as he is dry, take Soap and Brandy, mentioned in the fore-going Recepits, and lay it hot to the grieved place, and heat it well in with a hot Iron : it will ſwell a little at firſt, but it will ſoon fall ; it will ſtrengthen the grieved place much, and in a ſhort time it will be a perfect Cure.

or

Or thus : you may for a stifle after swimming, peg him as soon as he comes into the Stable, and then always when he stands in the house ; and when he is dry, rub in half an ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer, shaken together in a Glass. It will cause it to swell something more than Soap and Brandy, but it is admirable for a stifle, and a speedy Cure. Observe, that swimming is not good for any strain, but only to bring a stifle-bone right into the place again ; and you may try it for that, but not for a Strain. The Beast must stand in the House all the Time of his Cure. *Proved.*

CXX. *A speedy Cure for a Sinew-strain old or new.*

First, let blood in the Shackle-veins, which are in the Pastern, for it will much further the Cure ; then take the fattest Cat you can get, kill her, and flea her as soon as you possibly can ; then bruise the flesh and bones of the Cat small, and lay it upon a cloth, and bind it close to the Sinew-strain, from the Pastern up the legs, as far as it will go, and as warm as you can : you must take out her Guts before you bruise her flesh, or lay it to ; and you must, after you have let blood in the Shackle-vein, bathe the Sinew-strain with *Aqua vitæ*, and rub it in cold with your hand, and then afterwards lay the flesh of the Cat on a cloth to the place : Of all cures for a Sinew-strain this is the best and speediest ; roll a cloth two or three times about the leg, when you have laid the Cat on, to bind it on, because a Cat draws and knits mightily. Let him not come into the water till he be cured. *Proved.*

CXXI. *For a Poll-Evil in the Head of an Horse.*

IF you take it at the first swelling, then do thus : Take half an Ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, and anoint the swelling therewith, so far as it is swelled, and let it sink in and take its course for four or five days, in which time the skin will be shrunk up like a Purse : at the four or five days end, if you see the swelling begin to fall, then take Burgundy-pitch, and black Pitch, of each two ounces, and one ounce of Mastick, put them into a Pipkin and melt them ; then take a flat stick and spread it all over the swelling ; then take the shearings of cloth or stocks, and do them thick on with your hand upon the Pitch till it be hot : when your Plaister comes off, which may be a Fortnight or a Month after, if then you see the Oil and the Plaister have killed the venome of it, and taken down the swelling, then do no more to it. Again, if you see, when your Plaister comes off, that it is much swelled, or that there be proud flesh in it, then, if it be not broken, lance it, and if there be any dead or proud flesh in it cut it out ; then fill the hole or wound with fine Tow, Flax, or Hards, to dry the Blood up, and there let it lie five or six hours, then take it away, and put in some of the Medicine which you use for a Canker in the Head, Face, Eyes, or Nostrils of a Horse, *vide* Receipt C. With this Medicine dress it once a day at first, and as it begins to heal, dress it once in two days ; this Medicine will heal it suddenly ; cut a hole at the edge or lower part of the swelling, to lay it a draining, and it will heal a great deal sooner : dab and throw on good store of Wheat-bran upon it when you lay it on ; when your Plaister comes off, look upon the top of the Poll-Evil,

Evil, to see how far the dead, proud, white, jelly flesh goes; cut it all out with your Incision-knife, till you come at the red flesh which is sound: the Veins will bleed much, and spin again when you come at the quick; but let not that hinder you from cutting out all the dead proud flesh, which if you cut all out clean, you cannot do amiss, only take heed you do not cut the white Pax-wax, which runs along the top of the Neck, which some call a Cress; it is white, and you may easily see it; if you cut that, his Neck will fall, and look basely, therefore have a care. There is a white Pith in a Poll-Evil near the top of the neck by the Pax-wax; take your Nippers and pull it out, it will come out like a plug; there is no such thing in a Fistula: when you have pulled it out, put some of your Medicine to it, and it will heal it apace: Let not the dead flesh be left in the wound, but cut it clean out, although the wound seem never so broad: The same cure and the same way is to be used for a Fistula; the Beast must stand in the time of the cure.

Proved.

CXXII. *For a through Splent on both sides of the Leg; by some called a Great Bone-Scrupin.*

First, tie the Horse's Head close to a strong Post, then tie up his contrary leg, then bruise and beat the Splint on both sides with a bloodstick, or Bed-staff, beat it till it be something soft: if he will not endure the beating of it standing, cast him with a Rope; after you have beat it soft, take of the Oil of Riggerum 12 penny-worth, and rub it on with your fingers on both sides, upon the very splent and no where else; you shall have of this Oil but a little for a shilling. Tie up his head for two or three

L 2

hours,

hours, for it will smart, and tie up his contrary leg. This way will take off the Hair a little, but it will grow again of the same colour presently: If it be never so big, do but thus two or three times, and within a Week's time it will be quite fallen; one dressing will serve for a small splent, or for a blood splent. This way will a little break the hair, but not the skin. If you will, you may turn him out. Proved to be admirable.

CXXIII. *For a Malender.*

First, Clip away the hair which grows upon it and about it; then rub the Scabs off with a Hair-cloth, or the back of your Scissars or Knife; this rubbing of it will cause it to run a yellow matter: take a Linnen cloth, and wipe away the filth clean; then take four penny-worth of the Oil of Riggrum, and mix it with a little of your own dung, and lay it on with a flat stick upon a Linnen cloth, and bind it to for a week: then make it clean, and dress it again, and it is a cure. After your first dressing, you may ride him or turn him out. *Proved.*

CXXIV. *For a Looseness in the body of any Beast.*

Take a pint of Red-wine, or for want thereof a pint of Claret; warm it in a Wine-pot upon the fire, then put an ounce of beaten Cinamon therein, and give it him a little warm: you may put thereto the yolks of two new-laid Eggs; once or twice is a cure: give him warm water at night, and cold water next day, and ride him upon it. *Proved.*

CXXV.

CXXV. *For a Cold in Summer, or when a Horse doth not fill.*

BOyl a quarter of Red-stone Sugar in a pint of Sack, till it be dissolved, and then take it off the fire, and put in two spoonfuls of Sallad-oil, and give it luke-warm: ride hard when you have given it unto him: Give him warm water for three or four days after; keep him warm, give him now and then a Mash. *Proved.*

CXXVI. *For a sudden great heat, as in Hunting, Racing, or hard Riding, that the Horse's Grease is melted.*

THIS you shall know by the panting of the Horse that night he comes in so hot; for if he be over-ridden and his Grease melted, you shall know it by the panting at the breast and Girting-place, and heaving at the flank: you shall see the night he comes in, and the next day morning, that his Body will be mighty hot. For remedy, Take and give this, to purge him and cleanse him, and to qualify the heat and working of his body: Take one pint of Sack, and put to it one ounce of Diascordium, beaten small; mix them together, and give it to the Beast at any time cold, but in the morning fasting, is the best; give him warm water for three or four days after: give him bursten Oats, boiled Barley, and Mashcs made of ground Malt, keep him well littered, and cloathed warm. If he forsake his meat, and you see he hath lost his stomach, to bring him to his stomach again give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine mixed together, and heated luke-warm: in the morning after he hath drunk cold water, you may give him it with a Horn: It will

make him piss, clear his bladder, and bring him to his stomach again. After you have given him it, ride him a mile or two gently, and set him up warm; at night ride him a mile or two again, and litter him well, and keep him warm; Thus do for three or four days, or a week; at three days end, give him the Wine and Honey as before you were directed: If you see notwithstanding all these means used, that he will not fall to his meat, and that he is bound in his belly, and dungs very small; then give him this Cordial two or three times, two or three days betwixt each Cordial giving. Take three pints of stale Beer, household brown bread, the quantity of half a penny Loaf; boil these two well together; then take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter: give him this Cordial luke-warm fasting, and ride him a mile or two every evening and morning, as well when you do not give it to him, as when you do; ride him fairly, and clothe and litter him up warm: this Cordial will bring him to his stomach, and cause him to be loose bodyed, and dung soft, altho' he be weak, and have little or no stomach: Four or five hours after his Cordial, the first thing you give him, boil him half a Peck of Oats, and a pound of Fennugreek together in water till they be burst, and the water wherein these were boiled, pour it from the Oats into another Pail, and put some cold water to it, and when he drinks let him drink of this water; for the Oats and Fennugreek, throw some of them into the Manger hot, and if he be loth to eat them, then strew some Wheat-bran upon it, and it is very likely he will eat all together: This course taken in every particular, will bring your Horse to a stomach, and raise him suddenly. Look the Receipt following,

ing, for a dry Surfeit, and when the Horse's Cods are swelled, and he runs at the Nose; and there you shall see the purge of Aloes. A fortnight or three weeks after he is thus melted, and that you have given him the former things, to give him this Purge of Aloes, will do the Beast a great deal of good in this case: I am confident it is good: Or give him as much of the powder of Mechoacan, as will lie upon a shilling at three or four times; that is very good in a pint of Wine, or a quart of strong Ale. *Proved.*

CXXVII. For a Foundred Horse.

First, tie a Lint or blood-cord hard about the Pastern, and that will keep the blood up into his leg, that it cannot come down into his foot: when you have taken out the Soal, set on his shoe something hollow and broad, then untie the string about the Pastern, and knock the out-side of the Hoof, and the blood will come pouring out: Let him bleed well; then put a handful of Salt into the bottom of the foot, and put as many Hards, Flax, or Tow after it, as will fill the bottom of the foot: take two or three flat sticks, and lay them between the Hards and the Shoe, a piece of stiff Soal-leather will do as well; at the end of 24 hours take the Hards away, and take a handful of Nettle-tops, and a handful of Salt, and beat them together, and lay them to the bottom of the foot; and to keep them in, take Hards and Splinters, as you were directed before: at forty hours end, take the Hards away, and apply the same quantity of Nettles and Salt, mixed with the bigness of an Egg of Hog's-grease; beat them all together in a Mortar, and lay them to the Soal of the foot, and Hards and splinters as before; with this last Medi-

cine you may dress his foot once or twice more if you see cause: after you see the Horse goes a little well, set on another Shoe, formed with a broad Web, and let it stand broad and easy; and in ten days time the Horse will go very well and sound: when you come at your journey's end, wash his legs clean, and when his legs are dry, make a Poultis of a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, and a quarter of a pound of Sheep's kidney-fuet cut very small: Let these two boyl a pretty while in a Skillet, and when it comes off the fire, put two or three handfuls of Wheat-bran to it, and stir them all together, and make it thick like a poultis, and lay it to the bottom of the foot; then Hards and Splinters as before you were directed; then spread the rest of the Poultis upon a long piece of Linnen cloth, and lay it hot to the hair round about the top of the Hoof and the Fet-lock, and let it come under the bottom of the Hoof: lay it to as hot as you can; let every Poultis lie on forty-eight hours; Three or four Poultises laid to in this manner, will do the Horse much good, and cause his foot to grow and shoot out, and give him much ease, so as in a very short time he will go very sound. If an Horse be bruised in the bottom of his foot with a stone, or any other thing, this Poultis will give present ease: For a foundring, the Beast must stand in till the bottom of his foot be grown again. I hold it best to take out but one soal at a time, because if you take out both at a time, the Horse will not be able to stand: some take out Frush and all, some take out nothing but the bare soal, and leave the Frush. The way is, first cord the Pastern, then pare the soal, and then raise it round about the soal to the quick, as near the inside, or the outward shell of the Hoof as you can, with a Drawing-knife; then raise

raise the foal at the Toe; then lay hold with a pair of Pincers, and pull it quite out, but beware you break not the Veins in the foot.

Proved.

CXXVIII. *For a Back swanckt in the Fillet of the Loin: or for a wrench in the Back-bone, about the Navel-place: or for a Strain in the Kidneys, by being over-burthened in the Hinder-parts, or over-strained in the Kidneys in Race-running.*

IF you see any of these mischances to fall upon the Back or Hinder-parts of your Beast, then do thus and no otherwise, for all those mischances above-written. Take a hot Sheep-skin fleaed off a Sheep newly kill'd, apply it as hot as you can, with the fleshy side from his rump, all over to the midst of his Back-bone, if it will reach so far: Let it lie on twenty four hours, and at the end of that time, lay another hot Sheep-skin in the same manner to it, if need require, and you see the first will not do: Let the grief be never so great, two hot skins will do it, with the help of the Drink next under-written; but if the hurt be not great, the Sheep-skin will do it alone. It will make the Horse to sweat much, it will draw out all the bruise, and strengthen the Back of the Horse exceedingly in a short time: But if your Horse be so weak that he cannot stand nor go, then take a Sack or two, and Ropes, and throw them over a Balk, and hang him for nine or ten days; when you first hang him, clap a hot Sheep-skin to his rump and Back for twenty-four-hours, and at the end of the time, lay another hot Sheep-skin to, and then no more: In the time of this cure, give him this drink if the strain be great, If it be but small, this drink can do no hurt, but a great deal of good: Take
Poly-

Polygonatum, commonly called *Solomon's Seal*; you may have it at the Apothecary's, but it is dear: take ten roots of it that may weigh three ounces, Poly-podium, of the Oak, a quarter of a pound, two handfuls of Wood-betony, or for want thereof, as much Garden-betony; cut it small, and if the roots be dry, beat them to powder; If they be green, cut them thin; then take a gallon of strong Beer, or somewhat more, put it into a Kettle, and put the other three things to it, and let them boyl till the Beer be boiled half away; then take them off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pound of Honey, and give the Horse of this to drink three times in nine days, in the Morning fasting, and give him warm water to drink all the while, with a handful of Bran put into it; give him of the drink a quart at a time. Buy of these roots green, dry them, and beat them small, and keep them from wind and air for your use: If you cannot get the root of *Solomon's Seal*, make use of the other things; they may do well without, but better with it. Let him stand in the time of the cure. To this drink you may add Penny-royal, Clary and Comfrey, they are all knitting and Strengthening Herbs. *Proved.*

CXXIX. *For a new Wound made with a Stake, or such like thing, Stub or Fork.*

First, wash the Wound well with Butter and Vinegar melted together, then take a Clout and tie it about a stick's end, and dip it in some Linseed-oil, and run it to the bottom of the Wound, anoint it well, and in a short time nothing but this will heal it and kill the Gangrene of it. If the wind get into the Wound, and cause it to swell, anoint it with the Oil

Oil of Populeon round about the swelling : Train-oil and Verdegrease melted together, will heal and skin any Wound well and quickly. *Proved.*

CXXX. *For a Stub in the Foot or Heel : For an over-reach with the Toe of the after-foot, upon the Heel of the fore-foot ; A Tread or Cut above the Hair, or when a stone bath cut a Horse's Leg.*

First, Wash the Wound with fair water, or with Water and Salt ; when the Wound is dry, take a big Onion, or two or three small ones will answer the End as well, a spoonful of Pepper beaten small, as much Crown-soap as the bigness of an Egg ; these three Things must be beaten to a Salve, and laid upon a Linnen cloth, and laid to the Wound four-and-twenty hours, and at the end of that time dress it as you did before ; and so continue doing every four-and-twenty hours till it be whole : If this quantity of Medicine be too little, make more : As you see it heal, dress it but once in two or three days. This Onion-Salve will prevent a quitter-bone, if you lay it to before it break. This Salve is good to heal and cure all these hurts. *Proved.*

CXXXI. *For a Horse that is prickt in the shoeing, and afterwards festred.*

First, open it well, and take out all the corruption to the very bottom, so far as the Nail did go ; then take three or four House-snails, a little Salt, as much Soap as a Walnut : beat them all together, and lay it to the place that was pricked four-and-twenty hours, till you see it begin to heal ; then dress it but once in two days ; and in three or four dressings it will

will be whole : When you lay this Medicine to the bottom of the foot, lay some Flax, Hards, or Tow over it, and over that a piece of Leather or Splinters to keep the Hards and Medicine in : And if it break out, or be soft above the top of the Hoof, lay some of this Medicine to, and bind it on with a Linnen rag.

Proved.

CXXXII. *For a Horse that is prickt with a long Channel nail.*

First search it with your butterfess and drawing-knife, till you find where the Channel-nail went in ; open it well, and give it all the ease you can ; search it to the bottom with a little Tow at your Instrument's end, then drop ten or twelve drops of the Oil of Turpentine into the hole ; take a little Tow or fine Lint at your Instrument's end, and dip it in the Oil of Turpentine, and put it in Tent-ways ; then mix a little Crown-soap, a little Salt, and a little Pepper, beaten together, lay it over the former, and Tow or Hards over it, and a piece of Leather and Splinters over it to keep it in : The Shoe must be taken off when you dress it, and after set it on again : dress it once in four-and-twenty hours, till it be whole. If you find after three or four times dressing, that the Horse is in great pain still, and that you fear a breaking out about the Hoof, then take out the Soal of his Foot, and apply the Medicine in order, as you were directed for a foundred Horse, in Receipt CXXVII. Do with this just as you are there directed, to make the Soal come again ; after his Foot begins to grow again, take as much Hog's-grease as an Egg, and the like quantity of Burgundy-pitch, mix them together, and lay a pretty quantity there-
of

of in the bottom of the Hoof, and lay Hards or Tow over that, and a piece of Leather or Splinters over it, as you were formerly directed. Dress it every day for three or four days: this Grease and Pitch will much nourish his Foot, and strengthen it and keep it from drying up. Let him stand in the time of his cure, and then if you please you may turn him out abroad.

*Proved.**CXXXIII. For a brittle Hoof.*

Lay the Poultis to the bottom and top of the Hoof and Foot, as you have directions for a Foundred Horse, in Receipt CXXVII. Lay that Poultis to, and in three or four times dressing, it will make his brittle Hoof tough and hard as you can desire. Let him stand in the time of his cure.

*Proved.**CXXXIV. For an Horse's Yard, foul and furr'd without, so that he pisses in the Cod.*

Take some fresh Butter and White-wine Vinegar, and melt them, then pull out his Yard, and do off the filth with your hand, and wash it with the butter and Vinegar till it be clean; squirt some of it into his Yard with a Syringe, it will much help him in this particular.

*Proved.**CXXXV.*

CXXXV. *When a Horse doth not thrive, and when his Coat stands staring, and doth not lie smooth: For an inward dry Surfeit, that causeth the Cods to swell, sometimes continually, and sometimes betwixt times. When the Grease is melted, and afterwards set and dried in his Body, and his Legs sometimes swelled. For an Horse that is Gaunt and will not fill, or is Gut-foundred; when he is Costive in Body and dungs small. To procure a Stomack. The following Directions are admirably good for the above Disorders.*

First, make your Purge thus: Take an ounce of fine Aloes, the best is that which shines and glistens, an ounce will cost a shilling, beat it to powder; take a quarter of a pound of fresh butter, bray and mix these two well together, and put a handful of Wheat-bran to it, to make it stiff like a piece of Dough or Paste, then roll it up in Balls, made big in the midst, and sharp at both ends; this quantity will make four or five Balls; then hold up his Head with a Drenching-stick, and take his Tongue in your Left-hand, and put in one Ball to the root of his Tongue if you can, that he may swallow it the better: put your finger under his Tongue, then give him a Hornful of strong Beer cold after it; then give him a second Ball, and a Hornful of Beer to wash it down, and so do in like manner by all the rest; then ride him a mile gently, and set him up warm; let him not eat nor drink for five or six hours after it; then give him a little clean Hay at night, not before, and some warm water to drink, with some Wheat-bran put into it; the next morning give him warm water to drink in the same manner, and ride him a Mile gently, and tie him to the Rack for an hour after,

ter, then you may give him cold what meat he will eat; at night warm water and Bran again; the third day in the morning, after he hath done purging, give him cold water; and before you ride him after his cold water, give him two ounces of Honey and half a pint of White-wine heated a little warm, to make him piss, and to clear his bladder, and to beget a Stomach: then ride him a Mile or two gently, and at night air him again, and so do morning and evening till he be well; litter him well, and keep him warm. If you see that after his Purge, and after you have given him the Honey and White-wine, he does not fall to his meat, but is still bound in his body, and dungs very small, then give him this Cordial fasting two or three times, and let there be two or three days betwixt each Cordial giving. It is thus made; Take three pints of stale Beer, course Household Bread, the quantity of half a Penny-loaf: when these two are well boyled together, take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter; give him all these together as a Cordial luke-warm; then ride him a mile after it, and set him up warm, and tie him up to the Rack for three or four hours after it, then give him a Mash of bursten Oats or Barly, and warm water, with Wheat-bran in it, till the Horse be come to his Stomach, and be loose bodied again, which in two or three times giving he will be. The foregoing Purge is admirably good for a dry Surfeit, and for a Horse that is bound in his body, and dungs small: The Cordial with White-wine and Honey, is admirably good for a Horse that is weak, and hath little Stomach, to bring him to a Stomach again: When at any time, for the foregoing Diseases, you give a Mash of bursten Oats, to half a
peck

peck boyl a quarter of a pound of Fennugreek with them, and put some of them into the Manger hot : if he be loth to eat them, because, of the taste of the Fennugreek, throw some Wheat-bran over them, and he will eat them ; this is the only way to bring your Horse to a Stomach, and raise him suddenly. Concerning his swelled Cods, and swelled Legs, as soon as his Purge hath done working, take the charge of Soap and Brandy, and dab it on his swelled Cods, or swelled Legs, with a flat stick as it comes boiling hot off the fire : three or four days after it hath taken its course, whilst he stands in the house, take and ride him into the River up to the Saddle-skirts, with the stream and against it, half a quarter of an hour at a time ; wash him thus once every day, or twice, till you see the swelling quite down in his Cods or Legs, which will be in very few days : once laying on the Charge is enough. If it be a dry Surfeit, give the Purge first, and afterwards the Cordial of White-wine and Honey ; But if he have a cold, and run at the Nostrils, then first give him the following drink made of Anniseeds, Turmerick, Brandy or *Aqua vita*, Vinegar and Beer, and three days after give him the Cordial ; when a Horse is fat and lusty, and then melted, and the Grease set within him, in this case use the Purge first : But if he be fat and sick both together, then give him the White-wine and Honey, and Cordials, as you are before in this Receipt directed, to bring him to a Stomach first, and when you have done that, then give him the Purge, and order him after it as you are there directed. If there be hard Kernels between his Jaws or Chaps at the same time, the Charge of Soap and Brandy laid hot upon them, and heated well in, in once doing
it

it will either sink them flat, or break them: And if they break, wash them with Butter and Vinegar, and let them heal up of themselves.

All proved to be good and certain.

CXXXVI. *For a moist, hot, running surfeit, that falls out of his body into his Fore-legs, and sometimes into his After-legs, and sometimes into all four.*

THIS Surfeit comes with Colds and Heats, which are divers ways taken; when it falls out of his Body into his Legs, and runs hot, moist, white, yellow, thin, thick, stinking Water or Matter, in this case, the Horse's breath will stink and smell very strong, and his Legs will swell and stink extreamly; when this Surfeit breaks in his Body and falls down into his Legs, at his first going out the Stable, he will hardly draw his Legs over the Threshold, and he will be so stiff that he can hardly stir in the stable, but will hold up his Leg to his Midribs. Although this Disease be never so violent in breaking out, or causing his Legs to swell and run, yet you need not fear remedy for him, if you observe these Directions following. First, keep him fasting all the night before, or give him but a very little meat, to keep his Jaws from falling; the next day, in the morning before he drink, let him bleed on both the Neck-veins, and let him bleed well; then uncord him, and give him this drink following, which will much purge and dry up his gross humours in his Body, and cleanse his Blood: Take one ounce of Aristolochia, one ounce of Turmerick, one ounce of Anniseeds dry, and beat the Turmerick and Anniseeds small, and grate the root of Aristolochia; put all these together, with one handful of Rue, and a handful of Wormwood green or dry,

dry, and one handful of Red-sage, one handful of green Fennel : if it be winter, that you cannot get green, then take two ounces of Fennel-seeds, and beat them small, and put to the rest of the things, and put all into an earthen Pot or Pan, and put to them three pints of Running or Spring-water, and there let them lie in steep all night : the next morning before you give it to him, ride him a Mile till he be a little warm, and give it to him cold as it stood all night ; then after that ride him a Mile again, and let him stand upon the bit six or seven hours, and then give him a little Hay, and after that warm water and Bran ; the next morning ride him to the River, let him drink but once a day, and ride him two or three Miles after it : at three days end give him the former drink fasting, and follow the Directions before-named in this Receipt ; and so continue doing, by giving the former drink at every three days end, till you see you have dried up the gross humours in his Body, and caused them to cease running and swelling ; you may work him three or four hours in a day to get him a stomach : let it be in winter or summer, keep him in the House with dry meat ; When he is cured you may turn him out : Wash his Legs clean in some River up to the Hams, and keep his Legs as cool as you can all the time of the cure : One or two of these drinks given at three days distance, will dry up the Humours in his Body which feed the swellings in his Legs, Cods, or elsewhere ; these drinks will make him run at the Nose white or yellow : If he fall from his meat, you may the third day after his drink give him a Cordial, as it is set down in the foregoing Receipt ; and then a drink, and then a Cordial of White-wine and Honey : Now if there be great Chaps or Crannies in
his

his Legs, as it is an hundred to one but there will, by reason of the extream heat and continual running of the moist fretting humour, to heal them up, although ever so big, yea though the Sinews were almost rotted with the filth; to prevent which, and to heal it also, take this gallant Receipt following, which is for pains and Scratches, and, if it were ever so ill, in a short time it will heal it. The way to order the Horse and make the Salve is thus; In this case you must not ride him into the River or Water at all, but you must first take two or three Pails of fair Water and wash his Legs clean, then clip away all the hair close to the skin, so far as his Legs are Crannied or Scabby; then wash his Legs clean with another Pail of fair water, and let him stand till his Legs be dry; then take half a pound of Honey, an ounce of beaten Pepper, and ten heads of Garlick; beat them well all together in a Bowl till they come to a Salve; divide this Salve into two parts, spread the one half upon half a sheet of grey Paper, and the other half upon the other half sheet of Paper; then take a broad piece of Linnen-cloth and lay it upon the Paper, and so lay the Plaister to the Crannied place, and the cloth over it, and sew it on fast, that it may not come off: let this Plaister lie on two days; make a small Thum-band of Hay, and wind it about his Legs and over the Plaister for two days; at the end of which take all off, and take a Linnen-cloth and wipe the Chaps of every Cranny in his Legs or Heels clean, and then lay on a fresh Plaister, and do as you did before: in three or four times dressing it thus, it will be whole: He must not come into the water all the time of his cure. If you have an Horse whose Sinews are rotten, broken or cut, or much putrified, then apply

none but this Medicine to it, and it will draw, cleanse, and knit them together again. It is for a Sinew in this nature, the best cure in the world. After you have thus drencht him inwardly, and cured the swelling of his Legs outwardly; If you see he looks gaunt, and hath no Stomach to his meat, and do not fill and thrive well, if he be sick and weakly, give him White-wine and Honey, the Cordials mentioned in the foregoing Receipts, to bring him to his stomach again, then and not before give the Purge of Aloes: But if your Horse be gaunt, and girt up in his Body, if he be in any heart, and will eat his meat, in this case give the Purge first, and then your White-wine and Honey, and your Cordials, as you are directed in the foregoing Receipts, to bring him to his stomach: If you do as you are here directed, all along throughout the whole Receipt in every particular, you need not question but, through God's Blessing, you shall have the desired success you look for.

All proved.

CXXXVII. *To make a Horse stale free, and constantly.*

TAKE half a pint of White-wine, one ounce of Ivy-berries beaten to powder, and put to the White-wine; let it lie in steep all night, then give it to the Horse next morning fasting; do not heat it all, but ride him after it a mile or two, then tie him up to the Rack, two, three or four, hours after it: This is very good for the Wind-cholick, and to make a Horse piss freely: do this every Morning till you see him piss free; this will cleanse the Kidneys of all sand and filth; it is very good for the Stone and Gravel. These Berries you must gather when they
are

are black-ripe, which is about *Lent* or *Shrove-tide*: if you gather them green, or when they are full ripe, put them in a platter, and dry them in the Sun till they be fit to beat to powder, and give them as you were directed: It is as good for a Christian as for a Horse: Nettle-seeds is a great provoker of Urine; you may put a handful to the Berries and Wine.

CXXXVIII. *To cure the Vives under the Roots of the Ears.*

First, Let him Blood on both sides of his Neck, then clap a pair of Barnacles upon his Nose, and take a red-hot Iron, with the edge as thick as the back of your Knife, and with it make a streak from the Root of the Ears upon the middle of the swelling, downwards to the lowest part of the Swelling, in this manner, as this Figure directs you, three streaks from the long; burn it till the skin be yellow, and then sear it no more: when it is thus seared, anoint the swelling with a little Butter or Hog's grease: if you anoint it once or twice, it is enough; if you sear him deep, you must anoint him the oftner.



Proved.

CXXIX. *For the Squinsey, or Strangling, or Cold, that breaks out at the Nose, and hath run a year.*

THe Squinsey breeds the Canker in the Mouth, and at the Roots of the Tongue: At that time the Horse hath in his Wefand-pipe and stomach a great deal of tough thick phlegm; and when he cougheth much, as he will, thinking to void it, it will come in lumps into his mouth, and he will swallow it down again; and at that time his breath will be

very hot, and his Mouth very red : and if he have a Canker in his Throat, or at the root of his Tongue, or in his Mouth, you shall discern its smell by the heat and stinking breath. To cure the Canker, see Receipt C. and there is also the Receipt, and here also will cause a present cure. Now to cure the Strangling, or a Cold that runs at the Nose, or hath done for half a year or more, or Squinsey, when he is troubled with tough thick phlegm : For these three last mentioned, take these following Ingredients, and give them as you are directed : First, one ounce of Anniseeds, an ounce of Turmerick beaten to powder, half a quarter of Brandy or *Aqua vitæ*, half a dozen spoonfuls of White-wine or Vinegar, a pint and half of strong Beer ; put all these into a Skillet, and heat them Blood-warm, and give it to the Beast fasting : then presently run the point of the Cornet-horn into the third furrow in the roof of his Mouth, and let him bleed, then walk him a mile and set him up. Cloath and litter him warm. Let him stand upon the Bit four or five hours, he will sweat with his drink till one drop follow another. If you see he be sick and desirous to lie down, you may let him : Give him no Mashs but only warm water to drink, with an handful or two of Wheat-bran put into it, and the next Morning warm water and Bran again : and presently after give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine, or half a pint of Wine-Vinegar, if you have not White-wine ; walk him a mile after it : The third day in the Morning after this Drink, in the beginning of the Receipt, give him this Cordial ; three pints of stale Beer, Household-bread a piece as big as a great Toast, and crum it in, a quarter of a pound of Butter ; put them into a Skillet, and, when warm, give it to the Beast.

CXLII. For the Staggers.

IT comes at first of some corrupt Blood, or gross or tough humours, oppressing the Brain; from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolved by a weak heat, which troubleth all the head. The signs are these: Dimness of sight, and reeling and staggering to and fro; he with very pain will thrust his head against the Walls, and forsake his meat. For remedy, do these things in order as you are here directed: First take a pretty long straight stick, of the bigness of a Tobacco-pipe, smooth it well, and cut a notch or crotch at one end; then run up the stick to the top of his head, and job a little hard and turn the stick, then pull it out and he will bleed freely. It is bad to cord him about the neck in this disease; when he hath bled well in the head, give him this Drink, an ounce of Anniseeds, an ounce of Turmeric, beaten small, half a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vitæ*, a pint and a half of mild Beer, a pint of Verjuice, or if you have not Verjuice, then take a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, and put it to the Beer, and all the rest together, and heat them luke-warm, and give it to the Beast in the morning before he drink: as soon as you have given it him, take a handful of Herb-grace, and beat it small in a Mortar, a penny-worth of *Aqua vitæ*, and put half the *Aqua vitæ* into one Ear, holding it upright in the hollow of your hand, and put half the Herb-grace after it, and put Wool, Tow, or Hards after it to keep it in; then tie up the ear with a Wollen Lint or

M 4

Garter,

Garter, and so do the like with the other Ear : stitch up his Ears with a Needle and Thread, or otherwise with your Lint tie up both his Ears together, and at twenty-four hours end, unstitch or untie his Ears, and take out the Wool and Herb-grace ; the next day in the Morning, let him blood on both sides his Neck, and save of the blood a pint, or more, which you may do in a bowl, and put thereto a handful of Salt, and stir it well together, and give it the Horse fasting : four or five hours after give him sweet Hay, and at night warm water and Bran : after you have given him the first Drink, tie up one of his fore-legs, and strew good store of Litter under him, and he will lie down and take his rest, and come to himself within a day or two, or else be soon dead ; the Vinegar will make him piss, and the *Aqua vite* will make him sleep : if he comes not to his stomach with taking the Vinegar or Verjuice before mentioned, then give him Honey and White-wine, and the Cordial ; as you are directed in the Receipt for a dry Surfeit. After any sickness, give him when he comes to eat his Provender, Bran and Pease, or Bran and Beans ; when you let him blood in the head with your Cornet horn, let him blood in the third furrow of his mouth, and let him bleed well, and let him blood in the gristle of his nose, with a long Bodkin, or Shoemaker's Awl.

CXLIII. *For a Cold newly taken.*

TAKE half an ounce of Diapente, two penny-worth of Sallad-Oil, and two penny-worth of Tracle ; put them into a pint and a half of strong Beer, and give it to the Beast luke-warm fasting : give him

him warm water for two days and a Mash of ground Malt, and keep him warm in the time of the cure.

Proved.

CXLIV. *For an old Cold which causeth the Horse to run sometimes at one Nostril, and sometimes at both, and hath done for a year together, and is knotted with Kernels under his Throat between his Jaws.*

THe Cure is thus : Take an ounce of Turmeric, an ounce of Anniseeds, beat them small, one ounce of Lignum-vitæ, you shall have it at the Apothecary's, a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vitæ*, a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, one handful of un-set Leeks beaten small in a Mortar, wash the Mortar with Beer ; put all these together with a pint and a half of strong Beer ; give them to the Beast fasting luke-warm, and tie him up to the Rack six or seven hours, and litter and cloath him up warm ; at the end of that time give him a little sweet Hay, and at night give him some warm water and Bran ; the next morning give him warm water and Bran again, and presently after, give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine luke warm : then ride him three or four Miles after it, cloath and litter him warm when he comes in ; whilst he is abroad, boil him half a peck of Oats with two ounces of Fennugreek, and two ounces of Coriander-seeds, burst them all together, and give it him : the third day morning, give him a Cordial made of three pints of stale Beer, a quarter of a pint of Honey, as much Butter, a good piece of Household-bread : put in the Honey and Butter after the Bread and Beer is boiled together, and give him this Cordial fasting luke warm ; the fourth day morning, give him this
Drink,

Drink, one ounce of Polypodium, one ounce of Bay-berries, an ounce of long Pepper, one ounce of brown Sugar-candy; beat them all small, and put them into a quart of mild strong Beer, heat it luke-warm, and before you give it him, ride him a mile, and then give it him, and ride him two or three miles after it; cloath and litter him up warm: after he hath fasted for four or five hours, give him bursten Oats, with two ounces of Fennugreek, and two ounces of Coriander, as before; if you have no Coriander, then take two ounces of Carraway-seeds, and give him that night of the Oats and Seeds, and put the water where the Oats and Seeds were boyled, into some cold water, and let him drink that and no other; when you have rested him a week, then give him the first Drink mentioned in this Receipt, and follow him as you are directed every day; in the third week give him the same things again, in the same manner, and at the same distance of days, in all points, as you did the first week, and in three or four weeks it will be a Cure: The first drink doth loosen the filth, and open the Lights, and set them a running. The Cordial, White-wine and Honey, will keep him to his stomach, help him to avoid filth at the nose and mouth, and will much nourish him within; they do cleanse the stomach, breast and bowels, and do much waste the Squinsey in the throat; they do cut the tough thick phlegm. If you order these things as you are in many places directed, and air him moderately once or twice a day, the Horse will soon be found again. The last Drink of Polypodium, long Pepper, and Bay-berries, is a purger of the Veins, blood and Liver, and will stay the wasting of the Body: That day morning you give him the first Drink, apply the Charge of Soap and Brandy,

Brandy, made in a Salve, to the Kernels between his Jaws, and in a Week's time it will be fallen flat, and not break : lay the Charge on scalding hot, and heat it well in. If you see the yellow matter to become white, there will be the greater hopes of the Speediness of the Cure.

Proved.

CXLV. For a Canker in the Mouth.

YOU shall know it by these signs ; He will flaver at the Mouth, and the Roots of his Tongue will be eaten with the Canker, the sides of his Mouth will be hot, raw, and yellow : If the Canker have eaten any holes in his Mouth, and caused many sores, then take a pottle of running Spring-water, an handful of Red-sage, a dozen sprigs of Rosemary, an handful of unset Hysop. If this disease happen in Summer, then add five or six Walnut leaves, and a quarter of a pound of Roch-allum : put all these into a Kettle, and let them boyl till they be half consumed, then put all into an earthen Pan, and let it stand till it be cold : you need not take out the herbs, but when you use it, take ten or twelve spoonfuls of this Liquor, then pull out his Tongue with one hand, and have in' readines a Linnen cloth tied at a stick's end ; dip it into the Liquor, and wash his Mouth and Throat all over ; then pull out his Tongue again, and throw a handful of Salt into his Mouth ; then presently after it dip another stick's end tied with a Rag into Tar, and put it all over his mouth where the Sores are ; and once in three days give him a Cordial, and White-wine and Honey, made as you may see before, and the same quantity : Ride or work him upon it. This water, Salt, Tar, White-wine and Honey, and Cordials, will bring the Horse to a stomach,

stomach, cleanse his stomach, loosen his body : It will take away the heat of his stomach, and comfort his stomach, and cut the tough Phlegm there ; it will cure the Canker in a very short time, except his Tongue and Mouth be very much eaten indeed. You need not wash his mouth afterwards with the water and Tar, for the Wine and Honey, and the Cordials will heal it alone, and work the aforesaid effects. Let the Hay and Provender you give him be clean and moist, it will be the better. Give him no Chaff, for that will stick in his Mouth and fester it. *Proved.*

CXLVI. *To cure a Foul, Rank, Pocky Farcion, which runs all over an Horse, or in any particular part of his Body.*

AN Horse that hath the Farcion, if his breath smell very strong, and stink, then do not meddle with him for his Lights are rotten, and there is no cure for him, for he is as full of them within as without. But if his breath be sweet, there is no question of the cure : First, for all knotted, budded Farcions, separate the sound from the sick, for this disease is infectious, they will take it one of another. This disease cometh first of Colds and Surfeit : for remedy do as followeth : Give him but a little Hay overnight to keep his Jaws from falling ; the next day morning, let him bleed on both sides of the Neck, and let him bleed well, then give him this Drink ; One ounce of Aristolochia, an ounce of Turmerick, one ounce of Anniseeds : beat your Turmerick and Anniseeds small, and grate the root of Aristolochia, and put them all together, with one handful or two of Lung-wort or Liver-wort, Herbgrace, one good handful of Red-sage, a handful of green or dried Worm-

Wormwood, one handful of green Fennel : and if it be Winter that you cannot get it green, then instead thereof take two ounces of Fennel-seeds, cut the herbs small, and beat the seeds, and put them all to steep in three pints of running Spring-water, and let them lie in steep all night : the next day morning before you give it him, ride him a Mile till he be warm ; at his return give it him cold as it stood all night ; then ride him gently a mile after his drink, set him up warm cloathed and littered ; let him stand upon the Bit seven or eight hours, then unbit him and give him a little sweet Hay, and at night warm water with some Wheat-bran in it : the next day morning ride to the River, and let him drink, but let him drink but once a day, but ride him well upon his watering, and at the end of three days, give him his former drink again, and order him as before : work him moderately all the time of his cure. Be it in Winter or in Summer, for this Disease keep him in the house with dry meat ; when he is cured, you may turn him out, or keep him in the Stable which you please ; when he is cold, wash him twice a day up to the back, soak him well in the River, and at three or four days distance, if you see need require, give him two or three drinks more, ordering him as before : As soon as you have given him the first drink, with the end of your Cornet-horn let him blood in the furrow in the top of his Mouth. These drinks will make him run at the Nose much white or yellow matter, and they will make him spew at the Mouth much filth ; these drinks will much purge and dry up all the gross humours in his body, and cleanse the blood : After these drinks given, you shall see the Farcions to appear with red heads, and they will drop out of themselves ; and where you see them
ready

ready to drop out, apply this Medicine ; Take a quarter or half a pound of Roch-allum, and put it into the fire, and you shall see it run and be all of a Cake ; then take it out and beat it to powder, and mix as much as you think you shall use with your fasting Spittle, till it be like an Ointment ; and there where you see they are ready to drop out, lay a little of this upon the head of the bud, which is the head of the Farcy, and where you see they are hard in the flesh, let them alone, for some will die, and the rest will drop out of themselves ; ride him up and down in the River twice a day, as far as the swelling goes, a good while after the Allum and Spittle have taken place : These drinks will kill and dry up any pocky Gangrene Farcion, let it be in the head, body, legs, yea although it be run all over him ; it will dry them quite up. These Drinks, with the Soak in the River, and the Allum and Spittle, will make a speedy Cure. *Proved.*

CXLVII. *For a Farcy in the Head.*

IF it be in the Head and no where else, then blood him in both the Neck-veins in the Morning before he hath drank ; then give him the former drinks for a pocky Farcy, and no drink else, and after that with your Cornet-horn's point let him blood in the third furrow of the roof of his mouth, and tie him up to the Rack for five or six hours ; then give him a little clean Hay, and at night some warm water and Bran. I say if it be in his head, and no where else, and that some certain small buds do there appear ; then do nothing but blood him in the Neck-veins, and give him the drink, and bleed him in the palate of the mouth, and at the very same time apply the

the Charge of Soap and Brandy, as hot as you can, and heat it well in; lay it not upon the head of the buds, but lay it all over the swelling, and in a short time, with the drink-using, the Farcy will die, and the swelling will fall. *Proved.*

CXLVIII. For a swelling in the Fore-legs or After-legs.

IF the Beast have a great Surfeit, that falls down into his fore or after-legs, if you think it will come to a Farcy, and you see it grow very hard, or two or three buds appear, you shall prevent it by giving him two or three Drinks for the pocky Farcion, at three days distance between every drink, and by charging the swelled legs with Soap and Brandy, if it be not broken before: If you fear a Farcy, or see a few buds, do thus three or four days: after the Soap and Brandy is laid on, ride him into the River half a quarter of an hour at a time, twice a day.

CXLIX. For a Swelling in the Brisket, below the Chest.

IF it be a Surfeit that swells in the Brisket, or in any other part of the Beast, if you think it will come to a Farcy, and you see two or three buds to appear, then give him two or three Drinks for the pocky Farcy, at three days distance between each Drink. Let the swelling be broke or not broke, lay the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, above the buds, and heat it well in; after the buds appear, lay the Allum and Spittle upon it: These Remedies are enough for Diseases of this nature. *Proved.*

CL. *For a Swelling with a blow upon the Chest, or any other part.*

IF the swelling comes by means of a blow, be it where it will, be it hot or cold, if it be not broken, lay nothing to it but the Charge of Soap and Brandy, and heat it well in, and in four or five days it will either quite sink it, or break it: If it break, see for Directions in this Book.

CLI. *For a Farcy that is broken out in the Legs.*

IF you see it to be thus, then do not charge it, except you see it to swell above those buds, up to the body-wards, and then in such a case lay on the Charge of Soap and Brandy to stop it from running higher, as you are in many places in this Book taught before; upon the swelling all over, above the buds, but not upon the buds below, only let him bleed on the Neck-veins, and in the third Furrow in the roof of his Mouth, and then give him one or two of the pocky Farcion-drinks, at three days distance, till you see all the swelling killed and dried up, with the Charge of Soap and Brandy, and the drinks. Those buds that are broken; lay the Allum and fasting Spittle upon them, and they will dry and heal up; for those that are in the flesh, some will die in the flesh, and some will drop out. This is a certain cure.

Proved.

CLII.

CLII. *For a Water-Farcy.*

THe signs to know it from a Pocky-Farcy, are these: He will swell in great bags as big as your head, sometimes most along under the belly, and sometimes about the chaps and under his jaws. The Remedy: Take a Nail-rod, and make it bending at the end the length of a fleam, so as it may a very little more than go through the skin: at this end make it red-hot, and with it strike many holes all over the Swelling, and you shall see the yellow water come out pouring, and the swelling, whether in his jaws or chaps, or under his belly, suddenly fall quite down; this done, to qualify the heat of the Iron, rub a little Soap upon it, and give him but one Drink for this, which you give for the pocky Farcion: The more you work any farcy Horse, the sooner the Cure will be done, and the better he will thrive. If your Horse be poisoned with any poisonous Medicine, your often putting him into the cold water will destroy the working of it, that it will not go any further: Give him warm water to drink, and let him stand in the House the time of the Cure. *Proved.*

You may work any Farcied Horse with another, but let them neither stand together, nor feed together: And to make all sure, give the sound Horse one or two Drinks at three days distance, which you give for a pocky Farcied Horse, and those Drinks will prevent a Farcy of the sound Horse.

CLIII. *For a Button Farcy.*

THis Farcy you shall know by these signs : The Horse will be full all over of bunches and knots, some as big as Peas, some as big as Nuts, they lie in bubbles in the skin, and are easy to be seen : First, let blood on both sides his neck, and let him bleed well : the next thing is, take a little Housleek, and beat it and strain it through a fine linnen cloth, and put it into his Ears ; then take an ounce of Aristolochia, and grate it small, the tops of Rue an handful, as much Hog's-grease as an Egg ; beat these three last together till they be like a Salve ; as soon as you have put in the Housleek, into each ear alike, divide the other into two parts, and put the one half into one ear, and the other half into the other ear, and put some Wool after it to keep it in, then stich up his ears with a needle and thread, and tie a Liff hard about his ears, that he may not shake it out ; then tie the Liff of both ears together a little strait : when you have done thus, with the point of your Pen-knife make a little hole in his fore-head ; and after that, with your Cornet-horn raise the skin from his fore-head the breadth of your hand, round about the hole with your knife ; then take a red dock-root, and slice it, and put into the hole three pieces of it, which will be enough at once, it will draw a great deal of corruption out of it : the corruption that comes out will scald the hair off : after the strength of the root is gone, it will drop out of itself : when you see it is dropped out, anoint it with a little fresh Butter ; after you have put in the root, lay a Plaister of Burgundy pitch over it to keep out the wind and cold ; Let him fast seven or eight hours, and let him stand

stand upon the Bit : you shall see him flaver, champ and foam as if he was ridden ; give him warm water and Bran at night ; let it be in his Ears two days before you pull it out. Taking this course, you shall see the Knots and Bunches to fall in a short time, and the hair will come again upon his Fore-head. *Proved.*

CLIV. *To cure the Cords ; which is when an Horse can neither lift up his Head to the Rack, nor put his Head to the ground, no not to his Knees.*

YOU may know this Disease by the Signs above ; the cause thereof cometh by reason of an extrem cold which lodgeth in the stomach, and causes the Cords to set and shrink quite up, so that the Beast can neither lift his Head up nor down, but only to eat meat out of the Crib ; in this case a Horse is afraid to lie down, and if he be laid, he cannot rise. The remedy : First make him a comfortable drink of these thing ; Take half an ounce of Diapente, one ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, three penny-worth of *English-Saffron*, dry it by the fire in a Paper, and crumble it small with your fingers, two ounces of Honey, two ounces of fresh Butter, a pint and half of strong Beer, a quarter of a pint of White-wine Vinegar ; put all these things together, and set it on the fire till the Butter and Honey be melted, and no longer ; then take it off, and give it the Beast luke-warm fasting ; then walk or ride him till he be warm, then set him up, and tie him upon the Bit five or six hours, cloath and litter him up warm ; after it give him a little Hay, and then a Mash, and no warm water that night but the water in his Mash ; give him the next day in the Morning another Mash, and about nine or ten of the clock warm water and Bran,

and thus keep him for four or five days: look where the Sign is, if it be in the Head or stomach, do not cut him, for it will not be so well; yet you may cut him, although the Sign be there, but it will not be so well. In cutting observe this; You must cut him at the very bottom of the Breast, you shall see the Vein, and under the Vein lies the great sinew, as big as a Tobacco-pipe stem, just by the inside to the top of his Leg: when you see where the Vein lies, draw the skin aside which lies over the Vein, and cut that part of the skin an inch or more, which may just fall upon the Vein again; this being cut with your Cornet-horn point, make a little way and you shall see a blew film lie over the Vein; chafe it a piece till you come to see the Vein, with the point of your Cornet-horn, then draw the Vein aside with one hand, and put your Cornet-horn's end under the Sinew, and raise the Sinew up above the skin with your Cornet-horn, and cut it quite asunder; let it go, and put a little Butter and Salt into the Wound, and afterwards heal it up with some of the afore-named healing Salves; walk him an hour at a time twice a day for a Week together. If you find that with the first drink, the Cold breaks at his Nostrils, then give him the same drink again at three or four days distance between each drink, and order him as you are at the beginning of this Receipt directed. If need require, give him a third drink. It is an extream Cold that shuts the Cords: this drink will break the Cold, and in a short time the Beast will do well, and stir his Head again.

Proved.

CLV. *For a Stumbling Horse.*

First, tie him up with a Halter close to a Post that stands in a Shop-window, then take your Knife and cut a hole lengthways down to his Lips, end-wards, in the midst of his Nose, between his Nostrils, the length of your Thumb: when you have cut through the skin, then do off the red Film with your Cornet-horn's end, and you shall see a white flat Sinew lie before your Eye; take the point of your Cornet-horn and put under it, and raise it above the skin, then pull it hard out with your Cornet-horn, and turn your Cornet-horn about; then pull it the second time, and turn your Horn again, and so the third time; in this doing, you shall see him bring his Hinder-legs to his Fore-legs almost; when you have thus pulled and turned the Sinew two or three times about the Cornet-horn, then cut the Sinew under the Cornet to the Lips end, but cut not the Sinew upon the Cornet, nor about it; when you have cut it let it go, and put a little Butter and Salt into the Wound, then over it lay a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch to keep out the wind, and you shall see the Horse go very well, and never stumble afterwards. *Proved,*

CLVI. *How to make Diapente.*

Take a quarter of a pound of Aristolochia, a quarter of a pound of Myrrh, half a pound of Bayberries, the outward Husk peeled off, two ounces of White-Ivory, two ounces of Harts-horn; the round root of Aristolochia is better than the long, cut the outward rind, and then grate it small, do not dry it, but after you have grated it, beat it small by itself,

or with the other things in a Mortar : then put them into a fine Sieve, and searfe the finest out ; then put the biggest into the Mortar again, and beat it as small as you can, then searfe the finest from that, and beat the rest again, and so do and searfe it till you have done all very fine ; then put it into a Bladder, and keep it for your use ; Of this Diapente you may give and ounce at a time, although you give other things with it. An ounce of Diapente is a good drink alone in a pint of strong Beer for a new taken cold. *Proved.*

CLVII. *How to make Horse-spice.*

TAKE a quarter of a pound of Anniseeds, a quarter of a pound of *English*-Liquorish, a quarter of a pound of Grains, a quarter of a pound of Fennel-seeds, a quarter of a pound of Flour of Brimstone, more or less, these are the proportions to make the Horse-spice ; slice the Liquorish and dry it, and beat them all together. If you will, you may put in half a pound of Elicampane, first dried, and then beaten small in a Mortar with the rest of the things ; you may either put all these together, or else keep them severally by themselves. An ounce of this Horse-spice, with a spoonful of Sallad-oil, and a spoonful or two of Jean-Treacle, is a good drink (for a Country-man, who will give but a shilling or eighteen pence) in a quart of strong Beer ; this drink is for a Cold, and to make a Horse thrive, and to prevent Diseases ; if any Man upon letting his Horse blood, will have him likewise to have a drink, give an ounce of this Horse-spice in a pint of strong Beer heated luke-warm in a morning fasting, let him stand in the House, and give him warm water to drink, and a Mash.

Proved.

CLVIII.

CLVIII. To cure a Ring-bone.

THIS Ring-bone always groweth upon the In-
 step a little above the Hoof on the After-leg, about
 the bigness of a Walnut, sometimes bigger, some-
 times lesser, in a hard long crusty substance. The
 cure is; First, take up the Vein of the inside of the
 same Leg where the Ring-bone grows, then to make
 a certain cure of it, burn it with a hot Iron that is of
 the thickness of the back of a Knife, upon the top of
 the Ring-bone so far as the Swelling goes, and with
 your hot Iron make three streaks downwards, and
 three streaks cross them, as you may see
 in this figure : burn it but till it look yel-
 low and no more; then take a Horse-nail,
 and drive it through a pretty big stick,
 so that the point may come through as
 much as may go through the skin, and
 make it just to bleed; strike the point of the Nail in-
 to the seared lines, in every side three or four holes;
 then take an handful of Salt, and rub it hard in with
 your hands; a quarter of an hour after, lay this charge
 to the Ring-bone, as much Burgundy-pitch as a Wal-
 nut, and as much black Pitch, half an ounce of Ma-
 stick; boyl them all together till they be melted, then
 take a flat stick and spread it on good and hot; then
 flock it with Shereman's flocks, and daub them on
 close; this before it comes off, will lay it as flat as can
 be: He must not be ridden for a Fortnight; he must
 stand in the first night, and afterwards he may stand
 in or run out, so as he run in dry ground, this will be
 an absolute cure in once dressing.

Proved.

CLIX

CLIX. *For a Spavin as big as an Egg.*

IT groweth upon the inside of the hough of the after-leg: First, beat it with a Blood-stick until it be soft; then anoint it with six penny-worth of the Oil of Origanum upon the bone-spavin which you bruised; put your Oil into an Oyster-shell, or some such thing, and rub it in with your fingers, no where but upon the place which you bruised: Two days after the Oil hath taken its course, take two or three ounces of the Oil of Swallows, and anoint the Cord-Sinews in the bent of the leg to reach and give liberty to the Sinews that are shrunk: lay on of the Oil of Swallows but half an ounce at a time, and lay it on no where else, but upon the Sinews on the bent of the leg; after that the Oil of Swallows is well soaked in, you may ride him or work him: This Oil of Swallows doth much lengthen and give liberty to the Sinews; at three or four days distance you may lay on half an ounce more. If Blood-bags come in the Spavin-place at the same time the Bone-Spavin comes, then do not fear it with your Iron by no means, but only lay the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of Iron, and for certain it will cause it to fall. An able Farrier is of that opinion, that the Receipt in----- will speedily make it to fall, if first you beat the Bone-spavin with a Blood-stick, and afterwards apply the Cantharides and Nerve-Oil, as there you shall find it set down. *Proved.*

CLX. *To make a star in an Horse's fore-head.*

First, with a pair of Scissars cut away the hair close to the skin, in such a place as you would have the form of a star to be ; then take a piece of red brick, and rub it hard upon every place, where you have clipt away the hair ; rub it till it be at the roots of the hair, then wipe it clean with a linnen rag ; then make a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch, and spread it upon a linnen cloth, no longer nor wider than the form of the star itself ; then, a little before you lay it on, lay a hot Iron upon the Pitch to soften it, that it may stick on the better ; then clap it to the place, as a plaister fit for the star, and lay a hot Iron upon the back of the Plaister to heat it ; then over the first Plaister lay another Plaister a little broader, heating the second as you did the first, and so let it stick on till it come off of itself, which may be a month ; when these Plaisters come off, then to make the hair come white in the place where you would have the star be, take a little Honey and Butter, more Honey than Butter, and mix them together, and anoint the star once in three days, and do so for that distance of days four or five times, and in a quarter of a year you shall see the thing desired ; he may stand in the house or run abroad : you may work him or ride him : I know nothing to the contrary but that a man with this course taking, may make a mark in any form, what he pleaseth, and where he pleaseth about the Beast, whether in his buttocks, sides, or any other place, as well as the fore-head.

CLXI. *For the Pains or Scratches, or rotten broken Cuts, putrified Sinews, this Receipt will cure in a wonderful manner.*

IF it be the Pains and Scratches, do thus: Take a pail of fair water, if two or three, and wash his legs clean, and clip away the hair close to the skin so far as his legs are crannied or scabby, then with a pail or two of fair water wash his legs clean again, and let him stand till he be dry; then take half a pound of English-Honey, one ounce of beaten Pepper, ten Heads of Garlick, put all these into a bowl or cup, and beat them together till they come to a Salve: If the Pains and Scratches be on both legs, then divide the Salve into two parts, and lay one half upon one sheet of Paper, and the other half upon another half of grey Paper, and take a broad piece of linnen-cloth, and lay it over the Paper, and lay the Plaister to the hinder part of his legs, where the fore always is, and sew them on with a needle and thread pretty hard, so as it may not come off; sew it close in the fetlock, and all the way up so far as his legs are scabby, and let it lie on two days; you must make a small Thumb-band of fine Hay, and wind all over his legs, and over the Plaister, and let it remain as long; at two days end, take a Linnen-Cloth and wipe the chaps of every cranny and crack in his heels clean; then lay on a fresh Plaister, and do as you did before in every particular; and at two days end take away that Plaister; then lay on another, and let it lie on three days, and when you take that off, and see if need require, lay on another Plaister, and let it lie on three days more; and in three or four times thus dressing, it will be quite dried up, and whole. Let him

him not come in the water all the time of his cure. if his Sinews be rotten, broken, cut in pieces, or much putrified, then apply this Medicine as before, and let it lie on the same time as before ; and as it heals dress it the seldomer, and bind a Thumb-band of Hay over the Plaister, and keep him out of the water, and in the house all the time of the Cure. This Salve will draw clean, and knit the Sinews together again in a wonderful manner. It is for Pains and Scratches, and Sinews in this nature, the best Cure in the World. If one or two of the pocky Farcy Drinks were given in this case, I am confident it would much further the Cure, and dry up those humours in the body which feed the Scratches in his legs. *Proved.*

CLXII. *For the Strangullion in a Horse.*

THe signs to know it are ; It much differeth from that, when an Horse cannot Stale, and differeth from the Disease called the Gripe or Fret in the Guts, which will put an Horse to abundance of pain, and make him to tumble and wallow : This Disease called the Strangullion, if a Horse have it he will look gaunt and cannot piss ; he will offer, and stand straining to piss, but cannot ; his Bladder will be ready to burst with extreme fulness and heat of his water : for present remedy do thus ; Take a pint of Claret-wine reded well, and put into it an ounce of Ivy-Berries beaten small, one ounce of Parsley-seeds beaten small, and give it him at any time, once doing is enough. *Proved.*

You may likewise see, for the Gravel and Stone, what is given to a Man, and you may give it him.

CLXIII.

CLXIII. *For Fretting or Gripping in an Horſe's Belly.*

THIS Diſeaſe will make the Horſe to tumble and wallow with all four feet upwards, with a gripping wind in the Guts: you ſhall ſee ſome Horſes in ſuch extream pain, that they will ſwell therewith as if they would burſt, and will endanger the breaking of their Bladder, and in this caſe they cannot dung. For remedy, Take a quart of cold Salt beef or Pork brine, if you cannot get a quart, get a pint; put it into a Horn and pour it down cold; After this brine is down, anoint your hand and arm with Sallad-oil or Butter, and rake him, and pull out as much dung as you can, to give him all the eaſe you can; then take a good big Onion, and peel off the outward rind, then cut it length-ways and croſs-ways in many places, then roll it up and down in a handful of Salt, and what Salt it will take up, put it into a hollow Pye of Butter; but before you put it into his fundament, anoint your hand and arm with Butter and Sallad-oil, and run up the Onion thus rolled in the Salt and put into the Butter, as ſoon as you can, and there leave it; then tie up his tail cloſe to his rump as you can: being tied with a Cord, faſten the Cord to his Girths, that it may keep in the Onion and Butter; then lead him out and walk him, and in a quarter of an hour's time it will purge exceedingly. It will cleanſe his Maw much, and cleanſe his Guts, and kill the Worms: let his Tail be tied but a little while, that he may purge freely; prick him in the Mouth with your Cornet-horn the firſt thing you do. The next day morning give him a comfortable Drink, made of an ounce of Horſe-ſpice, a quarter of a pint of White-wine Vinegar, with a pint and a half of ſtrong

strong Beer; put them together; and give it to the Beast luke-warm fasting, and he will do very well after it. Give him bursten Oats, or a Mash for two days after it, and warm water the day you give him this Drink. *Proved.*

CLXIV. To kill Botts or Worms.

YOU shall know whether your Horse be troubled with Botts or stomach-worms by these signs; He will squitter and dung them, and all of a sudden he will dung very small; in this case he will void small white Worms of himself, he will be much knotted under his over-lip, the root of his Tongue will be fry and yellow, his breath hot, sweat much as he stands in the Stable, and will be very faint: Now if you see him to sweat in the Stable; then know for certain that he is far gone, and is in great danger. For remedy, take Turmerick and Anniseeds of each an ounce, one penny-worth of the flour of Brimstone, half a quarter of a pint of Brandy, or *Aqua vite*; beat the Anniseeds and Turmerick small, and then put all together into a pint and a half of strong Beer, except the Brimstone, and that lay upon the top of the Horn when you are ready to give him the Horn into his mouth: give this drink fasting, and let him fast four or five hours after it, and stand upon the bit, give him to drink warm water at night, the next day cold water, ride him after it, this drink will work pretty strong. If he have not been lately let blood before, let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and in the third furrow in the roof of his Mouth, with the end of your Cornet-horn. This drink at once giving will kill the Botts, and take him off his faintness, and much cleanse and purge him of tough gross humours.

in his body, upon which the Worms do breed. *Cul-pepper* saith, that Box-tree Leaves are excellent good to kill the Botts in Horses; they are hot, dry and binding; you may put in a handful of them into this Drink, and try conclusions. *Proved.*

CLXV. *For a Fever in a Horse.*

THe signs are, The Horse will fall suddenly sick, and be very weak, he will go heavy and sad, as if he would tumble down, and be gaunt in his Belly, fall from his meat, and look weakly in his Eyes, hang down his head, and stand drooping: When this sickness first takes him, he will tremble and quake, as if he had an Ague; for this disease take no blood from him by any means, it is death if you do. The remedy is, take half an ounce of Diapente, one ounce of Bay-berries, half an ounce of Long-pepper, beat all these together, then take half an ounce of Diascordium, and put all these into a pint and a half of strong Beer, heat it luke-warm, and give it to your Horse at any time of the Day, for this Disease is Dangerous, and will admit of no delays; cloth and litter him up very warm; the Diascordium in the Drink will cause him to lie down and sleep; after the drink hath done working, and the Horse done sweating, then give him half a pint of White-wine, and two ounces of Honey, mix them together, and heat them luke-warm, and give it him in the Stable; and after you come to air him, you may give it him abroad; three or four hours after, give him a Cordial made of three pints of stale Beer, and a quarter of a pint of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Butter, and a good piece of Household-bread, boil them a little together, and give it him luke-warm,

warm, and set him up for that Night ; give him warm water and bran at night ; next morning fasting give him the Cordial again, and at nine or ten a Clock, warm water and Bran ; at two or three a Clock, White-wine and Honey, and at night warm water and Bran, and afterward, now and then, a Cordial, and White-wine and Honey, and moderate airing will soon bring him to his stomach, when you see he is able to walk abroad, air him once or twice a day, it will do him much good. These Cordials, Wine and Honey, and airing of him, will cause the beast to mend apace. After he comes to eat his meat pttetty handsomely, take some Blood from his spur-veins, the Frets from him, sweating will do him much good. If he lie down and sleep, it will bring him down to his senses, and the Horse will mend much in twenty-four hours. If Diascordium do not make him take rest according to your mind, then you may take as much Poppy-seeds as will lie upon a Sixpence, in two half Hornfuls of any Beer ; if you cannot get Poppy-seeds, which some call Red-weed-seeds, then buy white Poppy-water at the Apothecary's, and give at each Nostril a spoonful, and that will make him sleep heartily.

CLXVI. *For a dry inward Mange.*

THe signs are these : His hair will come off by plats, and sometimes it will come all off from head to tail, and there will be a dry scruffy Mange, as well where the hair comes off, as where it stays on ; it is an extreme heat of the blood which causes the hair to scale off, and causeth the dry Mange in his body. If his Body be dried up and wasted, that the Horse be miserable lean and overcome with it,
then

then give him this one drink and no more, not else; viz. One ounce of the flour of Brimstone, two ounces of Rosin beaten small, one ounce of Turmeric beaten small, one ounce of Anniseeds beaten small: put all these, except the Brimstone, into a quart of strong Beer heated luke-warm, and give it him fasting, and put the Brimstone at the mouth of the Horn, to put it down with the other things: tie him up to the Rack for four or five hours; then give him warm water and Bran, at night bursten Oats: The next day after, give him in his Proven-der two spoonfuls of Rosin beaten to powder, at night the like; the next day the like, and then no more; this is to cleanse and purge away the mangy Surfeit that is in his body, and causeth the outward Mange: Also do thus, two or three days after his Drink, scrape off all the scabs and scruf clean with the back of your knife, or some other thing for that purpose, till the Blood and Water appear. Then presently mix an equal proportion of Oil of Turpentine and Beer together as will serve, and shake them well together in a Glass-vial, and anoint the Horse all over but once, and it is an absolute Cure. It will smart terribly, tie him close for an hour, till it have aken its course. But if you be merrily disposed, as soon as you have drest him all over with it, bid the Fellow go home with him and set him up; but believe it, he will not hold him long, for the beast will run away with him, and kick and wallow, and rub in a most strange manner, that one would think he was quite mad; but it will have done smarting in half an hour. It is a gallant Receipt. If the Horse be not much pined and shrunk of his flesh, do nothing but anoint him once outwardly, and give him this Drink, and the Oyl of Tur-

Turpentine and Beer, will kill the Mange of a Beast, Dog, Bullock, or any thing, with once dressing.

Proved.

CLXVII. *To stop bleeding at the Nose, or in the Mouth, where the Fleam or Knife hath cut a great gash: Or when you have cut the Vein in a Quitter-bone, and it bleeds that you know not how to stop it.*

FOR any of these, when nothing will stop it, this following will: First, take a Chafingdish of hot Coals, and burn three or four Linnen rags upon the Coals, laying them one upon another, and let the Horse's Mouth be over the smoak all the while as the blood doth fall out of the Horse's Nose and quench them, so you must blow them up with your breath again, till the Coals have burnt the Rags as black as a Coal, which when you perceive, take them as they are burnt black and bled upon by the Horse, and put them up into each Nostril an hand high; then hold up his Head, and have in readiness three or four quarts of strong Beer, and pour it down his Throat, to wash down the smoak and clotted blood which lies in his Throat. If he snort the burnt Rags out, have other burnt hot Rags in readiness to put up his Nostrils: And you must remember, as well when you fume him, as when you have stop his Nostrils with burnt Rags, to be often pouring down his Throat cold Beer, because the blood returning a contrary way will choak him: This course taken will stop bleeding at the Nose of a Man. If an Horse's Mouth be cut with a fleam at any time when you let him blood in the Mouth, and the fleam glance and cut a gash in his Mouth, and that it bleed so that you know not how to stop it, then take some of these burnt Rags

O

and

and lay them as hot into the wound as you can, and afterwards take another clean Rag and lay it over the Wound to keep in the burnt Rags, and tie on each side his Teeth a small string overthwart to keep it close to for 24 hours; at the end of which time you may take off the Cloth, but let the burnt Rags lie in the Wound as long as you please, for they will draw and heal mightily: when they come out you may put in more, and do as you did before: and so for a Quitter-bone, if you cut it till all the Veins bleed, and you cannot stanch the blood, then take of these hot burnt Rags and fill the hole full, and they will stop the blood in a very short time; and let it lie there for 24 hours, and they will draw it as white as can be, so that you may see what to do afterwards: This will stop the blood either at Nose, or in any Wound. *Proved.*

CLXVIII. *For a Cold new or old, or a Cough wet or dry.*

TAKE of Rue one handful, chop or stamp it very small, and put to it a penny-worth of Anniseeds beaten to very fine powder: make it up in Pills with sweet Butter, and so give it to your Horse in a pint and an half of Ale or Beer fasting: ride him upon it, and let him fast four or five hours after it: Do this every third morning till you see his Cough quite gone. This hath been found to be most sovereign for an Horse that hath a Cold, whether newly or formerly taken; or for a wet or dry Cough: It is also most excellent for an Horse that hath been over-ridden, or any ways wronged by labour. *Proved.*

CLXIX.

CLXIX. *For a young Horse that hath taken a new Cold.*

TAKE water and Salt as much as will suffice, brew them well together, make it blood-warm and give it him, and do after as is necessary. This I find to be singular good to be given to a young Horse that hath newly taken cold. *Proved.*

CLXX. *For a new taken Cold, with a Coughing.*

TAKE of Bays, of Anniseeds, and of Liquorish, of each half a penny-worth, of brown Sugarcandy one penny-worth: make all these into powder, and sew them up in a fine Linnen rag, and so tie it to the Bit or Snaffle of the Bridle, and so ride a Journey and travel him: If it be a Cold newly taken, it will cure him in a short time. This I have tried and found to be good, for it will cure both Cold and Cough, if it be thus used with riding and exercise. *Proved.*

CLXXI. *For the Botts.*

TAKE as much black Soap as a Walnut, as much flower of Brimstone and a little Garlick bruised; put these into a pint and an half of strong new Beer, or sweet wort; steep it all night, and give it the Beast next morning fasting, and tie him up to the Rack three or four hours after; then give him warm water and what meat you please. *Proved.*

CLXXII. *For a Blood-spavin.*

First, Take a strong Shop-halter, and put the Noose or Head-stall about his Neck close to his shoulders; then take the other end of the Halter, and take the contrary After-foot from the ground, which the Blood-spavin is not upon, and put the other end of the Halter about his Pastern, and draw it with the Halter from the ground, and tie it to the Head-stall of the Halter, that he may not set it down; by doing thus, you may take up the Vein and sear him as he stands, but the best way will be to cast him, and to tie his other three Legs, and let that be at liberty; then before you take up the Vein, half a foot above the Spavin-place, in the small of the Ham in the inside of his Leg, you must first draw the skin cross with your fingers on one side of the Vein, then cut a hole in the skin an inch and an half long down his Leg thus | in that part of skin which will lie right over the | Vein; then let the cut go, and the skin will lie over | the Vein: then with the point of your Cornet-horn, lengthways as the wound is cut, chafe and fret the thin skin or film to pieces, that you may see the Vein lie blue; then with the point of your Cornet-horn, by degrees, run it between the Vein and the skin, and raise the Vein above the skin, and after that put two short Shoemaker's ends between the Vein and the flesh, a little distance one from the other, to tie or take up the Vein after it hath done bleeding; then, and not before, with the point of a Pen-knife, slit a little hole lengthways in the Vein, not cross the Vein by no means, for fear of cutting the Vein in pieces: you must open the Vein as it lies upon the Horn, and when it hath bled enough,
 tie

tie the ends that you before put under it above the slit of the Vein pretty hard, and tie the other end below the slit of the Vein pretty just, and leave the end an inch long hanging without the skin to keep the hole open, that the matter may come out at it, and that the skin may not heal up, before the wax threads have eaten the Vein to pieces, which will be within a Week; when you have tied up the Vein, as is shewed you, then put into the hole or Wound a little piece of Butter and Salt mixed together, to heal it up: after all this, before you let down his Leg, (in case you do it standing) but whether you do it standing or lying this you must do: Take a Nail-rod at the same time, and make it with a thick edge, bending or hook'd back; heat it hot, and make, in the bent of the leg, with it one long streak downwards, sear it besides the Sinews till the skin look yellow, make the searing thus in the bent of the leg beside the Sinews, but not upon the Sinews, as the foregoing Figure shews you; and thus you must sear him on the inside and on the outside of the Knee, where you see the swelling appear; there you must sear him likewise with one Line and two crosses, cross it in this manner. After you have thus seared it, then apply this Charge; A quarter of a pint of Brandy-wine, or for want thereof, a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vitæ*, and a penny-worth of Crown-soap: boyl them together till they come to a white Salve, then lay it all over the swelling as hot as you can, with a flat stick, and heat it well in with a Bar of Iron: once laying on this Charge is enough; when this hath lain on a Week, then ride him, whether he halt or not, so



you ride him moderately : then take an ounce of the Oil of Swallows, and rub it well in with your hand upon the Sinews of the bent of the leg, to retch and give liberty to them ; use of this Oil every four or five days, and in four or five times dressing it will be a cure. After he comes from work or riding at any time, and his legs be washt and dry, then rub on this Oil upon the bent of his leg, and upon the Sinews : you need not heat it in now with a hot Iron, but rub it well in with the palm of your hand, and within a fortnight's time the Blood-Spavin will not be seen, and the swelling will be quite gone : If you take a Blood-spavin, at the first coming out of a young Horse, then do but fire it lightly, and lay the former Charge to, and in once dressing it will be a compleat cure. *Proved.*

CLXXIII. *For an old Cold.*

IF you see cause, take blood from the Neck-vein, otherwise not ; then instead of giving him Oats, give him Wheat-bran boyled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost full of water, and when it begins to boil, put in your Bran, and let it boil a full quarter of an hour ; then take it off, and let it stand till it be almost cold, and about four or five of the clock in the Morning, give it him as hot as he can eat it, and for his drink give him the same water, and at Night give him Oats and White-water to drink, and let him be covered and littered up warm. If it be in Summer, let not the stable be too hot, for that will take away his stomach, and make him faint ; And when you give him his water at Night, always give him as much of this powder as an Egg-shell will hold amongst his

his Oats, to which you must keep him eight days together, or longer if you shall see cause; the boiled Bran is that which drieth up all his corrupt and gross humours, which was the cause of his cold: Now the powder is this, *viz.* Take of Cummin-seeds, Fenugreek, Silerus Montani, otherwise called, Sifilers, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each of these two ounces, Quick-brimstone six ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mix them all well together; it must be given him in his Oats the quantity that was prescribed before; but he must first be watered with White-water; and then presently let him be well rubbed all over, and cloathed and littered warm; and an hour before you give him his Oats, put into his Rack a little sweet Wheat-straw, and let him eat thereof an hour or better, and then, and not before, give him his Oats mixed with this powder; which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure, and with doing thus his Cold will be gone in a short time, and still sooner, if you air him an hour before Sun-set, and an hour after Sun-rising, if the Sun shine, mark that; keep up his stomach with White-wine and Honey, and the Cordials, or with what else you think best of.

Proved.

Now, if this cold bring with it a violent cough, as is often seen, then use this Receipt following.

CLXXIV. *For a Cold with a violent Cough.*

First, give him the Wheat-bran boiled, together with the powder with his Oats, as is directed in the foregoing Receipt, but not above three or four days, or till you see he hath purged sufficiently, for that the said Powder dispersed the corrupt and

gross humours that are in his body, which do occasion the Cough; and when you perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keep him notwithstanding to his White-water, which is no other thing than water made hot in a Kettle, and then put in some Wheat-bran, or Barley-meal; let him eat the Bran as hot as he will, and drink the Water a little warm: But always an hour before you water him, take a stick a little bigger than your thumb, of very nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen cloth about it four or five times, first dipped in Oil of Bayes, and put into his mouth; and with some leather thong or piece of small cord, fasten it to either end of the stick, and so fasten it over his Ears like the head-stall of a Bridle, like as Smiths do when they burn a Horse for a Lampra's; Let him drink with this stick thus in his mouth, and so stand with it an hour after at the least, that he may lick and suck up the said Oil; and after three or four days are expired, and that you see he hath purged sufficiently, which is a little before mentioned; then when you give him the Oats, give him amongst them this other Powder following, *viz.* Fennel-seeds four ounces, Fennugreek two ounces, and cardamum one ounce; beat them but a little, or else he will blow them away when he eats his Oats: put one spoonful into his Oats, and keep him warm, and use him as is prescribed in the foregoing Receipt, and you will find it to do him much good.

Proved.

CLXXV. *A rare Receipt to cause an Horse to vomit.*

TAKE two of the greatest Roots of Polypodium as you can get from the Oak, wash and scrape them very clean, and tie it to his Snaffle or Bit; then let it be steeped in Oil of Spike a whole night, and in the morning fasting, put on his Bridle with the Roots tied to his Bit, and ride him softly and fairly an hour or better with it in his mouth; and if he be troubled with any Rheumatick or Flegmatick humour, or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way pester, clog or annoy his stomach, this very thing will force him to vent and vomit it up at his mouth or nose, and it will cause him to cough and sneeze much, that you shall see him to send forth a great abundance of filth, and evil slimy matter from his stomach and head, and in a short time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood, and exhaust all the waterish humours in such sort, as by temperate ordering of him, and doing as heretofore is prescribed, you may keep him a long time sound, perfect, and serviceable; and this you may give to an Horse newly taken from Grass, or to any other Horse that hath taken a Cold, or to any other filthy, foul, foggy or purisy Horse whatsoever: And this upon trial, upon all occasions before mentioned, you shall find to be most admirable; this being done, I conceive it to be very good to give them White-wine and Honey, and the Cordial formerly set down.

Proved.

CLXXVI. *For a Curb.*

THIS Curb always groweth upon the back-part of the heel of the knee of the hinder-leg, in a hard substance; I shall give no more signs, for it is easy to be seen: The remedy is this, first tie up the contrary leg as you do for a Blood-spavin; then with an hot Iron sear it length-ways down his Leg upon the Curb, till the skin look yellow; then draw your hot Iron cross it, as you did for a Blood-spavin, in two or three places; then presently take an Horse-nail and drive it through a stick, so that the point of the nail may come a little through the stick, the breadth of a straw, or a little more: then set the point of the nail to the fired places, and strike it, some ten or twenty times, according as the burning goes in several places, and as you see occasion: then take a handful or two of Salt, and rub it well in with your hand to stop the Blood, and half an hour after, wipe the Salt off, and apply the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of Iron; and as your Iron cools, flake it over it to dry it in the better: let the Charge lie on till it come off of itself; you may ride him every day after three or four days; in the mean time, let him stand in the Stable.

Proved.

CLXXVII. *For a Quitter-bone, Old or new.*

THIS Quitter-bone always grows just above the top of the Hoof on the hinder Foot, and sometimes on the Instep just above the Hoof on the side of the Foot; but be it in any place, this is the cure: First, take up the Vein in the small of the leg; if the

the Quitter-bone be on the inside of the leg above the Hoof, then take up the Vein on the inside of the leg: If it be on the outside of the leg, then take up the Vein on the outside; this is the way to further the cure, and make all sure by taking up the Vein which does feed it. You may see how to take up a Vein, if you look into the Receipt for a Blood-spavin. For the taking up of a Vein is all alike, be it where it will. After you have taken up the Vein let it bleed well, and put into the wound some Butter and Salt: Then with a little Tow or Hards, or a Linnen-cloth, wound about your Instrument's end, search the Quitter-bone to the bottom, and where you see the matter come out, there put in your Instrument; when you have searched the wound and made it clean, put into it a piece of white Arsenick as big as a small bean, and put a little Tow after it, and lay a little Tow upon the top of the Quitter-bone, with a Linnen cloth next, and a Woollen cloth over all, tied on fast, that it may not come off; then tie him up to the Rack with a strong Halter one day, till the anguish of the Arsenick be over, for fear he come at it with his mouth; let the Arsenick lie in forty hours, then take out the Hards, and you shall see the hole in the Quitter-bone look very black, and swelled more than it was before: It is the effects of Arsenick, therefore you need not fear, but as soon as you have pulled off the Cloths and Hards from the place, you may put his Foot into a pail of cold water for a quarter of an hour, and let it soak; or if the River be near that you can lead him into it, if it be clear water, so that no Sand or Dirt get into the wound, and let him stand and soak his Leg there for a quarter of an hour, for his Leg must be once a day soaked,
either

either in a pail of clean water or in the River, for a week together, take off his wet hard Cloths, and tie on dry ones, this is all you have to do till you see the Core of the Quitter-bone come out; which when you see, make this Medicine to Heal it up: Take a penny-worth of good Honey, put it into a Pipkin, and when it begins to be hot, put in a penny-worth of Verdegrease, and three or four Spoonfuls of White-wine Vinegar; boyl them all together for half an hour, then take it off the fire, and when it is cold take a little fine Tow and dip into it, and put it into the wound, and lay a little dry Tow or Hards over that, and a Linnen-cloth over them, and bind them on with a string, and so dress it once a day till you see it begin to heal, and then dress it but once in two days, and as you see it heal dress it the fewer times till it be whole: There will be a little space bare where no hair will come; put in Arsenick but once, and although you tie him up to the Rack because his mouth should not come to the Arsenick, yet give him meat for all that. Do but remember these two last Cautions, and you need not question the cure, for it will be speedy.

Proved.

Now suppose you meet with a Quitter-bone that hath been a long time in other Farriers hands, that have so corroded and poisoned it that it is much swelled about the Pastern and Leg: In this case, you must first take up the Vein on that side the Leg that the Quitter-bone grows on, to keep the humour back that feeds it, then put in as much Arsenick as a Bean, as you were directed before, and so doing as it is there exprest, soaking his Leg as you are therein taught, and when the Core is out, heal it with the same Salve that is there prescribed: but if
there

there grows proud flesh in it whilst you are a healing of it, then scald it with Butter and Salt, and that will keep the proud flesh down: An old hurt in the Foot may come to be a Quitter-bone, and break out above the Hoof, but a Quitter-bone will never break out in the Sole of the Foot. Except you take up the Vein, a Quitter-bone is a very hard thing to cure. After the Core is come out, it will not be amiss before you go about to heal it, to wash the sore well with White-wine Vinegar, and then to wash it with the water mentioned in Receipt XXXVIII. and then apply the healing Salve mentioned in the foregoing Receipt.

CLXXVIII. *A Preparation before you give the Black Drink for the Glanders, in the next following Receipt.*

First take Blood from him; if you do find it gross or phlegmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend; then instead of Oats give him every morning, about 4 or 5 a clock, Wheat-bran prepared, for four or five days together, and the water to drink that the Bran is sodden in, as you may see in the Receipt for an old Cold, which is to qualify and dry up the moist and bad humour abounding in him; and then let him blood in the Neck, if you have not before. The next day rake him with your hand, and then give him this Glisten: Make a decoction of Mallows one pint and a half, and put into it four ounces of fresh Butter, and of Sallad oil a quarter of a pint: administer it Blood warm, and then with a strap of Leather tied to his Tail and put between his legs, and the other end fastened to the Sursingle, so strait that the Tail may be close

close to his Tewel or Fundament, that he cannot purge till it be loosened : This done, mount his back and ride him gently an easy Trot or Foot-pace for half an hour ; then set him up cloathed and littered, with the Bit in his mouth three hours, during which time he will purge kindly ; then give him White-water and Hay, and at night a few Oats, for he must be kept to a spare diet : The next day mix well together the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, and anoint all along two Goose-feathers, and run a thread through each of their Quills ends, that you may fasten the thread to the top of the headstall of his Bridle, and run them up as high as you can into each nostril, and so ride him an hour or two, and this will purge his head and lungs, and cause him to send forth much filthy matter ; but when you set him up, take them out, and an hour after give him Hay and White-water, and Bran prepared, which is mention'd in the Beginning of this Receipt : The next day give him his Glister again, and let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before ; the next day use the Goose-feathers again, and order him as you did before : And all this is but to prepare him for this after Drink that followeth, but you must observe to keep him always warm, and let him be ever fasting and empty, before you give him any Physick, and air him evening and morning if the Sun shine, or if the weather be warm or calm : Then three days after give him this Drink following, which is called the black Drink.

CLXXIX. *The Black drink for the Glanders.*

TAkenew-made Chamber-lie, and of the best and strongest White-wine Vinegar, of each half a pint, then take of Mustard-seed two or three spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vinegar, and grind it well; then put your Vinegar and Chamber-lie to the Mustard, and stir them well together; then take of Tar and Bay-salt of each a like, as much as may suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof as two or three Egg-shells will hold;-----having prepared these things, keep him overnight to a very spare diet, and the next morning take and ride him first, till he begin to sweat, then give him the Egg-shells filled with Tar and Salt, as before prescribed, and as soon as he hath taken that, give him with a Horn the afore-named Drink made of Chamber-lie, Vinegar and Mustard, all at the mouth, except two small hornfuls which must be poured into his Nostrils; which when he hath taken, ride him again as much as you did before, set him up, and cloath and litter him warm, and so let him stand upon the Bit till three or four a Clock: then unbit, and give him a warm Mash, and order him in all things, as is usual for Horses taking Physick. Give him this Medicine or Drink every other third day, if the Horse be strong, and if he be weak in body, once in three or four days: And this is an infallible cure in three or four times giving, if it be rightly given, though he be far spent.

Proved.

CLXXX:

CLXXX. *To cure the Glanders running at the Nose :
Also all colds and Rheums.*

First observe this, always when you give him Oats, put some Honey to them, and rub them very well together betwixt your hands : continue to do thus, till he leave running at the Nose. This is one of the best and most certain Cordials that I know, for it disperses all the Phlegm and Choler, it also purgeth the Head and Brain, it purifieth the Blood, it venteth evil humours, it causeth a good digestion, and freeth a Horse from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, &c, Proved.

CLXXXI. *For a Fistula or Gangrene in the foot, by reason of some Channel-Nail, which hath lain long and deep in the foot, that breaks out above the hoof, and causeth the sole of the foot to come out, and causeth the leg and Pastern to swell very much.*

IF this Nail cause the sole of the foot to come out, and do break out above the hoof, and cause the pastern and leg to swell ; but in case the sole of the foot be not come out, then take it out as you were directed formerly, by girting the fet-lock hard, and when you have taken out the sole of the foot as you are there directed, search the wound with a little Tow at the Instrument's end, to see which way and how far the Channel-nail went ; when you see where the holes are, drop in ten or twelve drops of the Oil of Turpentine, and take a little fine Tow, or a little Lint at your Instrument's end, and dip it in the Turpentine, and put it in Tent-ways : then over this Tent lay to the bottom of the hoof a handful of Nettle-

Nettle-tops, and a handful of Salt well beaten together, stuff his foot well with Tow, and let it lie on twenty-four hours, and always when you dress it take off the shoe, and when you have dressed it tack on the shoe again: dress it thus once a day with a Tent, dipt in Turpentine, and laid to the sole first, and then the Nettles and Salt over that, till you see the sole come on a little; and when you see it a little grown, then apply the Poultis following in this manner (but not before) and lay over the Poultis Hards or Tow, and over the Tow a piece of leather, and over the leather splinters of wood, his shoe taken off, and set on again as you were shewed in another place; let him stand dry and in the house till he be whole, which will be in a few days; the Poultis must lie on the first dressing twenty-four hours, the second dressing forty-eight hours, the third dressing forty-eight hours, and so continue till the sole of the foot be grown firm and strong again. The Poultis is thus made: Take half a pint of salt Beef or Pork-brine, and put it into a Skillet, a quarter of a pound of Kitchen-stuff-grease; and when you have boiled these two a pretty while together, put some Wheat-bran to it, and make it not too thick nor too thin; when you have taken out his sole, and untied the Cord about his Pastern, if it bleed much, then put a handful of Salt into the bottom of the foot, with Tow, Hards or Flax, between the sole of the foot and the shoe, and splinters and a piece of leather over it, to keep it in: at twenty-four hours take it off, and lay on the Nettles and Salt, as you were before directed, but no otherwise. Thus much for the cure of the sole of the foot. But mark what followeth, which belongeth to the foregoing Receipt; which is, when the nail in the foot doth not only

cause the sole of the foot to come out, but also breaketh out above the hoof, and causeth a Gangrene or swelling in the Pastern, and so up the leg: In this case, after you have searched it with a little fine Tow or Hards, with your Instrument's end, then drop into the hole a few drops of the Oil of Turpentine, and after that put in a Tent, dipt in the Oil of Turpentine, into the hole as far as you can, and immediately apply the Poultis, laid upon a large linnen-cloth, to the swelling in the Pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and bind it close to with another cloth that it may not come off: tie him up to the Rack for seven or eight hours, that he may not pull it off with his mouth; let it lie on the first dressing twenty-four hours, and for the other dressings the time you were directed before, till the swelling be down, and the fore be whole. Always put in a Tent, dipt in the Oil of Turpentine, before you lay this Poultis to, or any other thing: If the hoof come off and it swell, and break out above the hoof, if all these happen together at once, you must observe the distinct directions. The cure of that in the sole of the foot, from that which breaks out above the hoof, and apply each Cure to each Disease. In this case the Poultis must be first applied above the hoof, because when the sole of the foot is taken out, you must not lay the Poultis to the sole of the foot till it be a little grown: and further, with the great pain and continual holding up his foot from the ground, his Sinews in the bent of his leg will be shrunk; to remedy which, use the Oil of Swallows, as you may see for a Blood-spavin in Receipt CLXXII. But if you cannot get the Oil of Swallows, if his sinews be knit or stiff, then rub in some Trotters-Oil, which is made of Sheeps feet, it is to be had at the Tripe-houses;

houses; but for want of either of these, boil some Hog's-grease and *Aqua vitæ* together, and rub it in with your hand cold; which Receipt is incomparable for shrunk sinews.

Proved.

CLXXXII. *For a strain in the Coffin-joint, or a Sive-bone in the Socket of the Hoof.*

FOr remedy, Take off the shoe, and then pare the bottom of the Foot as thin as you can, till the blood do almost appear; you shall know in what place the strain is in, by taking the Foot in your hand, and wrying it to you and from you: if it be there, he will shrink at it much when you thus turn his Foot; when you find where it is, make this Poultis and lay it to hot. Take a pint of powdered Beef or Pork-brine, and a quarter of a pound of Kitchen stuff-grease, put them into a skillet, and boil them together half an hour; then take some Wheat-bran and put to it; make a Poultis thereof, not too thick nor too thin; then set on the shoe again, and put a good quantity of this Poultis as hot as you can into the sole of the Foot; then stuff the sole with Tow or Hards, and either splinter it in with a flat stick, or with a piece of sole leather, to keep it in, and let it lie on forty-eight hours; then take a long linnen cloth and spread the rest of the Poultis scalding hot all about the top of the Hoof, the Pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and let it lie on 48 hours: at the end of which take it off and lay on another, and let it lie on as long, and so likewise a third or fourth, till you see him go sound, which will be in a very few days, and after a week's time he will not complain of it: If you have occasion to ride him, after the third dressing you may ride

him eight or ten miles moderately; a little before you set him up wash his legs, and when they are dry take off his shoe, and lay the Poultis to as before: This Poultis is nothing differing from that in the Receipt before. *Proved.*

CLXXXIII. *A Purge for filthy Slime, and to carry away the peccant humours which Surfeits have ingendred.*

TAKE a pint of White-wine, or a quart of new Ale, which you can best get, as much of the best powder of Mechoacan as you can take up with a shilling at four times; put them together and give it luke-warm, ride him gently a mile or two, and set him up warm, and let him stand upon the Bit five or six hours: then give him a warm Mash, and half an hour after give him Oats and Bran mingled together a little at a time, wet his Hay that night: This will make the slime to come away in great flakes upon the Dung; if after this his stomach fail, then give him White-wine and Honey, and the Cordial. This is a very rare purge, but before you give it, use the directions in the Receipt next following.

Proved.

CLXXXIV. *For an Horse that is sick and Surfeited by Colds, whether in Winter or in Summer.*

FIRST let him Blood, then give him this Purge afterwards: Take of Aloes Succatrina two ounces made into fine powder; then make it up into Pills with fresh or sweet Butter, and give it the Horse over night, he having been kept fasting the whole day before, and instead of Hay, straw, or any other meats

meats hard of digestion, two or three days before you give him this Purge, or any other Purge, let his meat be either Wheat or Rye bran, as you may see in a Receipt or two a little before; or you may give him Bread made on purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oats well sifted both dry and sweet, and let his Drink be White-water only, which is nothing else but Wheat-bran sodden in water; the next day in the morning early, after he hath taken the Pills, give him either a sweet Mash, or for want thereof White-water, for that will make his Pills to work the more kindly that day; then let him fast till night, during which time he will purge freely; then at night give him White-water, after Oats and Bran, and give him, for all night, Hay sprinkled with water. If he be strong bodied, it may be he will not purge the first day, but the second day he surely will; in the mean time give him Mash, White-Bran boiled, and White-water or clean Oats, and after his purging keep him warm and well littered; keep him to White-water for two or three days after, or longer, and when you give him cold water let it not be with excess. This is an excellent purge.

Proved.

CLXXXV. *For a strain in the Pastern of an Horse.*

TAKE of the grounds of Beer, called Heild, that is, when all the Beer is drawn quite off, Hen's-dung, Nerve-oil, and fresh Grease that never had Salt in it, make a Poultis thereof and lay it to: This is admirable for a strain in the Pastern or Fet-lock, and will make a speedy cure.

Proved.

CLXXXVI. *For an Horse-Cough.*

TAke five or six Eggs, and lay them in sharp White-wine Vinegar, till the shells be somewhat soft, then take his Tongue in your hand, and put them down his Throat one after another: Give them fasting, and let him neither eat nor drink for five or six hours after, ride him a mile or two after you have given it him, give him warm water to drink for once, and keep him warm. This will cure him forthwith. *Proved.*

CLXXXVII. *A suppository to supple the Guts, to dissolve and send forth all dry and hot Excrements.*

First Rake him, then take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three Inches at the smaller end, then anoint the other part being the bigger end, with Sallad oil or fresh Butter, and so put it up into his Fundament; then hold his Tail to his Tewel half an hour, or tie it close to his Tewel with a strap of Leather, and fasten it to his Sursingle, and in half an hours time it will be dissolved: then let loose his Tail and leap his back, and trot him up and down till he do begin to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the more kindly: this is the most gentle of all suppositories. *Proved.*

CLXXXVIII.

CLXXXVIII. *Another Suppository to be given, when you dare not without peril of his life give him any thing else inwardly: Then give him this.*

TAKE of common Honey six ounces, of Salnitre one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flour and of Anniseeds in fine powder, of each one ounce; boil all these together to a stiff thickness, and so make it into Suppositories: anoint these as you did the former, and your hand also, and so put it up into his Fundament the length of your hand; then tie his Tail between his legs, for an half hour, in which time the Suppository will be dissolved, then ride him and order him as before. This is very good, especially in case of Surfeits or inward sickness: rake him first, and keep him warm. *Proved*

CLXXXIX. *A Suppository to purge pblegm.*

TAKE a piece of Casteel-soap, pare it and bring it into the fashion of a Suppository, put it into his Fundament, and order him as before. *Proved.*

CXC. *A Suppository to purge Choler.*

TAKE Savin as much as will suffice, and stamp it to Mash, and stamp with it Stavesacre and Salt, of each two ounces; boyl them in common Honey, as much as will suffice to make it thick, and so make it up into Suppositories, and administer one of them like as you are before shewn, and order him accordingly.

CXCI.

CXCI. *A Suppository to purge Melancholy.*

TAke a red Onion and peel it, and prick it cross-ways with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before.

CXCII. *Another Suppository.*

TAke a pint of common Honey, and boil it till it be thick, and make it up into Suppositories as it cooleth; and administer it as before, and order him also in the like manner: This Suppository purgeth evil humours, it cooleth and comforteth the body very much, and causeth a good appetite to meat.

Proved.

CXCIII. *Directions for Suppositories.*

First observe this: When at any time you do administer either Potions, Glisters, or Suppositories, you must do it in a Morning fasting, except necessity urge the contrary.

Secondly, You must not at those times suffer him to drink cold water, no not with exercise, but either sweet Mashs or White-water.

Thirdly, It is very needful before you administer any of these, that you Rake him: and be sure you keep him warm.

A Suppository is but a preparative for a Glisten or Purge, to make way that they may purge the better.

CXCIV.

CXCIV. *To kill Worms.*

TAKE Bear's-foot and Savin, Lavender-cotton, the flour of Brimstone, give it him in sweet-wort; it will kill the Worms, and turn them into slime; Ask for the powder of Caroline at the Apothecary's, it is as admirable a thing to kill Worms as can be, you may give three or four penny-worth at a time in a pint and a half of sweet Wort. It is a very safe thing.

Proved.

CXCV. *To purge by Grass in Summer.*

IF your Horse be surfeited, or hath been over laboured the Winter before, then turn him out when the Grass is in the best heart: Now that grass that will purge most and best, is a new-mown Meadow, for that will rake his Guts very well, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; therefore let him go there not above fourteen or fifteen days, and then put him into some other Pasture, where the Grass hath not been touched with a Sythe, and there he will belly well, and in a short time recover much flesh, and be very fat and lusty. This purging will scower him bravely, and send away all ill humours and surfeits, and ease his limbs marvellously well, and do his legs and feet much good, and refine his corrupt blood, and make him nimble and full of spirit. Also to mow green Rye before it be eared is most wholesome, for it scowreth, cleanseth and cooleth the body very much; so do the leaves of Sallow, and the leaves of the Elm-tree.

CXCVI. *A Glister for a sick, surfeited, diseased Horse.*

IF your Horse be newly taken from Grass, and that you hold it needful his body should be cleansed from bad humours, which either his Grass or former surfeits might bring: First rake him, and then give him this Glister following, *viz.* Take Mallows three handfuls, Marsh-Mallow roots, cleansed and bruised, two handfuls, Violet-leaves two handfuls, Flax-seed three spoonfuls, and as many of the Cloves of white Lilly-roots as you may easily hold in your hand; boil all these in fair water from a gallon to a wine quart; then strain it, and put thereto one ounce of Sena, which must be infused or steeped in the Liquor three hours standing upon the hot Embers; then put thereto, half a pint of Sallad-Oil, and then administer it Glister-wise blood-warm, and cause him to keep it half an hour or longer if you can: and the best time to give this Glister, is three or four days before the full or change of the Moon; but if occasion be, you may give it any other time: this Glister is to be given to a foggy fat Horse, which otherwise cannot be kept clean. It purgeth the Guts abundantly, and it is chiefly to be given an Horse that is newly taken from grass. And the next day after you have given him this Glister, give him this Drink following.

CXCVII. *A Purge.*

TAKE the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of *London* Treacle two ounces; mix and brew them all together, and give it him blood-warm; then keep him upon the bit six hours after,

after, warm cloathed and well littered, and give him a sweet Mash, and White-water, and Rack him with sweet Wheat-straw, oats and Bran; this both purgeth and comforteth; two or three days after, give him this Drink following.

CXCVIII. Another Purge.

TAKE a pint of White-wine, and put it into one ounce of Sena, and let it steep all night; next morning betimes strain it, and put into it one ounce of the best Aloes made into fine powder, half an ounce of Agarick, and a spoonful of the powder of Liquorish; mix and brew them all together, and so give it to your Horse blood-warm, and ride him gently a quarter of an hour after it, and so set him up warm, well cloathed and littered, and let no cold air come to him, nor let him eat nor drink for six hours after; and at night give him a sweet Mash, or White-water, and let his Rack-meat be sweet Wheat-straw, Oats and Bran; the next day let him blood, and prick him in the third furrow of his mouth, and if his blood be bad, take two quarts from him, but if good, scarce a quart: keep him warm, and give him sweet Mashs or White-water, and put into his drink either the powder of Brimstone or of Fenugreek, or Turmeric, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them; which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink a spoonful at a time. And this is very good to cool the blood, purge Choler, and other peccant humours, and to purify and refine the blood. And this is not only good for Horses newly taken from grass, but for other sick, surfeited, diseased Horses.

CXCIX, *Another Purge.*

TAke one ounce and a quarter of Gentian, slice it thin, boil it in a quart of Beer till it come to a pint, and give it him blood-warm; It will make him very sick for a short time, but you need not fear, for it will do him much good: let him fast after it five or six hours, and then give him a Mash of White-water; and the next day give him this following.

Mingle Honey with his Oats, and rub the Honey and Oats well together between your hands, and continue thus doing till you see him quite cured, which will be when he hath done running at the Nose. This is one of the best Cordials I know, for it disperfeth all Phlegm and Choler; it purgeth the head and Brain, it purifieth the blood, it venteth evil humours, it causeth good digestion, and freeth an Horfe from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, and the like, as you may see set down before, which is the same with this; this and the purge foregoing you must give one after another. And for the Honey and his Oats mixed together, I conceive you may give them in other cases; as when an Horfe is troubled with cold Rheums, running at the Nose, Glanders, Phlegm, or Choler, or such like.

CC. *Of Glifters, and their use.*

A Glister is given as a preparative to a purging drink; and a Glister by cleansing the Guts refresheth the Vital-parts, and prepareth the way before; wherefore I advise every Farrier, before he give

a drink, whether purging or otherwise, If the Horse be not at that time loose in body, that after Blood-letting, the next day he give a Glister: this done he may the better give what is requisite; otherwise if he give the Drink before the Glister, he may stir and provoke the evil humours, which by reason of much costiveness and Wind, and other impediments in his Guts, to attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done without great hazard to the life of the Beast. I therefore advise, if the Beast be costive and bound in his body, to give a Suppository or Glister first, then his purging drink.

CCI. What a Decoction is.

A Decoction is a Broth made of divers Herbs, as Mallows, Marsh Mallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and sometimes white Lilly-roots, or such like things, which we do boil in water to a third part; and sometimes instead of Herbs and Water, we take the fat of Beef-broth, or the broth of Sheeps-heads, Milk, or Whey.

CCII. What quantity of Broth or Decoction is put in to make a Glister.

FOR the quantity, we do administer according to the Age, strength and greatness of the Horse; for if he be of a strong and able body, of large growth and stature, fat and lusty, in this case we put in three pints; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, in this case a quart is enough; we often put in half a pint of Oil, of Salt two or three drams, and sometimes we put in Verjuice, and sometimes Honey, as we see cause. Drugs we use, as Sena,
Cassia,

Cassia, Agarick, Anniseeds, Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, Sugar-candy, and such like.

CCIII. *For the quantity of Drugs put into a Glister.*

FOR the quantity of Drugs, you ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one Glister at the most, neither put in above four ounces of Butter, and let it be but Blood-warm when you administer it.

CCIV. *What time is fit for an Horse to keep his Glister.*

WHEN you give it him, let him be empty, and before he do receive it, rake him : After you have given it him, let him keep it half an hour, it will do it the more good ; the longer he keep it the more good it will do him : Hold his Tail close to his Fundament all the while.

CCV. *The length of the Glister-pipe.*

THE best Instrument wherein to give an Horse a Glister, is a Pipe made on purpose, which ought to be twelve Inches in the shank, which must also be put home : And when the Glister is put into his body, then draw away the Pipe by degrees, not all at once.

CCVI. *A Glister for a Horse that is bound in his body and cannot dung.*

TAKE the fat of Beef-broth (if he be sick, weak and lean) a pint and a half is enough ; if he be big, fat and lusty, you may put in two or three pints ; put
to

to it half a pint of *English* honey, and two drams of white Salt : mix them well together, and administer it Glister-wise blood-warm ; then clap his Tail close to his Tewel for half an hour or longer, and if then it do not work, as I am confident it will, ride him up and down a gentle trot for half an hour more, but not till he sweat ; then set him up warm cloathed and littered, and let him stand upon the bit four or five hours, in which time he will purge kindly : then unbit him, and give him sweet Hay, and an hour after that, give him White-water, and he may drink any cold water in a day or two after ; and this is the best cure for this Malady. This Glister will open and loosen the body, bring away all offensive humours, remove all obstructions ingendred in the Body by means of excessive heat ; it cleanseth the Guts, and purgeth away all slimy substance. And this you will find to be the best remedy for a Horse that is costive and bound in his body, and that cannot dung. This hath been often proved.

CCVII. *For another Glister.*

TAKE two handfuls of Melilot, two handfuls of Pellitory : if you can get neither of them, then take two handfuls of Camomile, but Pellitory is the best if it can be gotten ; boil any one of these in a Decoction of water to a third part, then add to it of Sallad-oyl and of Verjuice of each half a pint, of Honey four ounces, of Cassia two ounces, mix all these together, and administer it luke-warm, and order him as in the first Glister. It will open the guts and body very well, and will take from him all hurtful and offensive Humours. It will carry away all Spungy matter. It will allay the biliousness and
sharp-

sharpness of humours, cleanse inward Ulcers, and much refresh and comfort the Vital spirits; But if you find that by giving too great a quantity your Horse purgeth and scowreth longer or more violently than you think is meet and good, or for fear it should stir up in him more bad humours all of a sudden, then you may easily allay it with this following Glistre.

CCVIII. *A Glistre restraining, to stop looseness.*

TAKE of the Decoction in the Glistre aforegoing a pint, and put thereto as much Cow's Milk as it cometh warm from the Cow, and put also thereto the yolks of three new-laid Eggs, well beaten and mixed together, and give it Blood-warm: This Glistre is only to be given to a Horse that is very laxative, or doth empty himself too much, which is occasioned oft-times by over much debility or want of strength, or when nature is very much offended: You may give this Glistre as often as need shall require, and till you see his looseness stop.

CCIX. *A Glistre for a fat foul bodied Horse, that is newly taken from Grass, or for any sick, surfeited, diseased Horse.*

TAKE three handfuls of Marsh-mallow roots cleaned and bruised, Violet-leaves of each two handfuls, Flax-seed three spoonfuls, the Cloves of white Lilly-roots a small handful; boil all these together in fair water, from a gallon to a Wine-quart; then strain it, and put thereto of Sena one ounce, which must be steeped in the Liquor three hours standing upon the hot Embers; then put thereto half a pint of Sal-

Sallad-oil, and being blood-warm administer it Glister-wise, causing them to keep it above half an hour: And the best time to give this, is three or four days before the full or change of the Moon, yet it may be given with much benefit at any other time. This Glister purgeth the Guts abundantly, and is chiefly to be given to an Horse that is newly taken from Grass.

CCX. *A Glister for Melancholy.*

TAKE of Whey a quart, of Anniseeds in fine powder two penny-worth, the leaves of Mallows two handfuls; boil all these together till the Mallows be soft, then strain it, and put thereto of sweet Butter four ounces, and when the Butter is melted, give it Glister-wise blood-warm. This purgeth Melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting; it refresheth the dulled Spirits, and causeth a good Digestion, if the Horse be kept warm and well tended.

CCXI. *A Glister to be given in case of a desperate Sickness: It helpeth Fevers; is good against the Pestilence and all languishing diseases, most excellent against surfeits either by provender or otherwise: and will give great strength in a short time, if it be rightly made and carefully given.*

TAKE of the Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, and Cassia, of each half an ounce, of brown Sugar-candy in powder three ounces: Then take of Mallow-leaves a handful, and boil them first to a Decoction in fair water, then strain it, and put thereto the before-named Ingredients, and give it
Q blood.

blood-warm: This is most sovereign to be given in case of a desperate sickness, and for all the diseases afore-mentioned.

CCXII. *A Glister for the Pestilence, and all Fevers.*

TAke half an ounce of the pulp of Coloquintida, the seeds and rind taken away; of Gum-dragant three quarters of an ounce; boil all these in three quarts of water to a quart, with Centory and Wormwood of each half an handful, and a quarter of an ounce of Castorium; strain it and dissolve it into the Decoction of Gerologundium three ounces, and of white salt three drams, and of Sallad-oil half a pint, and then administer it Glister-wise, blood-warm; this hath been often proved to be most excellent good for the diseases above-mentioned.

CCXIII. *A Lenitive Glister.*

TAke the Decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of fresh Butter four ounces, or of Sallad-oil half a pint, and give it Glister-wise blood-warm; this is the gentlest Glister of any before prescribed, for it is both a loosener, and a great cooler of the body, and doth infinitely ease pain. Also it is good for Convulsions or Cramps, and most singular against costiveness, proceeding from any sickness or surfeit by Provender or Foundering in the body.

CCXIV. *A Glister for the Cholick, or any sickness or Gripings in the Guts or Belly.*

TAKE salt water or new-made brine two pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and administer it Glister-wise, blood-warm; this is averred to be the most excellent for the Cholick, or any sickness or griping in the Guts.

CCXV. *Of sickness in Horses.*

SICKNESSES in general are of two sorts, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member; The first of them not visible; the other apparent, and known by its own demonstrations. Of the first then, which offends the whole body, as Fevers of all sorts, the Quotidian, Tertian, Quartan, and Hectick, Fevers Pestilential, Fevers accidental, or the general Plague, are known by these signs: Much trembling, panting, sweating, and fallow countenance, hot breath, faintness in labour, decay in stomach, costiveness in the body; any or all of which when you perceive, First let the Horse bleed, and then give him Treacle: Take of Celandine roots and leaves a good handful, as much of Wormwood, as much of Rue, wash them well, and then stamp them in a mortar; which done, boil them in a quart of Ale, then strain them, and add to the Liquor half a pound of sweet Butter; then being luke-warm, give it to the Horse to drink.

CCXVI. *Of the head-ach, Frenzy or Staggers.*

THe signs to know these Diseases, which are all of one nature, and all of one effect Mortal, hanging down of the head, reeling; the cure is, to let the Horse bleed three mornings together; after walk him a while, then cloath him, cover his Temples over with a plaister of Pitch, and keep him exceeding warm, let his meat be little, and his stable dark.

CCXVII. *Of the sleeping evil.*

THe Sleeping evil or Lethargy in Horses, proceeds from cold Phlegm, moist humours which bind up the vital parts, and make them dull and heavy: The signs are, continual sleeping, or desire thereunto. The cure is, to keep him much waking, and twice in a week to give him as much sweet Soap as the bigness of a Duck-egg in the nature of a Pill, and after give him to drink new Milk and Honey.

CCXVIII. *Of the Falling-evil, Planet-struck, Night-Mare, or Palsie.*

ALthough these Diseases have several faces, and look as if there were much difference between them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is only cold Phlegm, thick humouring endred about the Brain, and benumbing the Senses, weakning the members; sometimes causing the Horse to fall down, and then it is called the Falling-evil; sometimes weakning but one member only, and then it is called Planet-struck; sometimes

times oppressing a Horse's stomach and making him sweat in his sleep, and then it is called the Nightmare; sometimes spoiling one special member by some strange contraction, and then it is called the Palsy. The cure for any of these infirmities, is to give the Horse this purging Pill: Take of Tar three spoonfuls, of sweet Butter the like quantity, beat them well together with the powder of Liquorish, Aniseeds and Sugarcandy till it be like a paste, then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick, and give them to the Horse, observing to warm him both before and after, and keeping him fasting two or three hours both before and after.

CCXIX. *Of the general Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews.*

CRamps are taken to be contracting or drawing together of Sinews of any one member; but Convulsions are, when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extreamest part, are generally contracted or stiffened. The cure of either, is first to chafe and rub the member contracted with Vinegar and common Oil, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or else with woollen cloths, either of which is a present remedy.

CCXX. *For any cold or cough whatsoever, wet or dry; or for any consumption or Putrefaction of the Lungs whatsoever.*

A Cold is got by unnatural Heats and too sudden cooling, and these Colds ingender Coughs, and these Coughs putrefaction, and rottenness of the

Lungs : The cure therefore for them all in general; is to take a handful or two of the white and greenest Moss, which grows upon an old Oak, or any old Oaken-pale of Wood, and boil it in a quart of Milk till it be thick ; and being cold and turned to a jelly, then strain it and give it to the Horse luke-warm every Morning, till his Cough ceaseth.

CCXXI. *Of the running Glanders, or mourning of the Chine.*

TAke of Auripigmentum two drams, of Tussilaginis as much made into powder, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like Paste, and making thereof little cakes, dry them before the fire ; then take a Chafing-dish of Coals, and laying one or two of the Cakes thereon, cover them with a Funnel, and when the smoak ariseth, put the Funnel into the Horse's Nostrils, and let the smoak go up into his head ; which done, ride him till he sweat ; do this once every Morning before he be watered, till the running at his Nostrils cease, and the Kernels under his Chaps be lessened.

CCXXII. *Of Hide-bound, or consumption of the Flesh.*

Hide-bound, or Consumption of the Flesh proceedeth from unreasonable travel, disorderly Diet, and many Surfeits. It is known by a general dislike and leanness over the whole body, and by the sticking of the skin close to the body in such sort, that it will not rise from the body : The cure is, first to let the Horse bleed, and then to give him to drink, three or four Mornings together, a quart of new Milk, with two spoonfuls of Honey, and one spoon-

spoonful of course Treacle ; let his food be either foddren Barly, warm Grains and Salt, or Beans split in a Mill ; his drink Mashcs.

CCXXIII. *Of the Breast-pain, or any other sickness proceeding from the heart, as the Antocow, and such like.*

THese Diseases proceed from too rank feeding and much fatness ; the signs are, A faltering in his Fore-legs, a disableness to bow down his neck, and a trembling over all his body : the cure is to let him blood, and to give him two Mornings together, two spoonfuls of Diapente in a quart of Ale and Beer, for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart.

CCXXIV. *Of Tired Horses.*

IF your Horse be tired in journeying, or in any Hunting match, your best help for him is to give him warm Urine to drink, let him blood in the Mouth, and suffer him to lick up and to swallow the same : then if you come where any Nettles are, rub his mouth and sheath well therewith ; then gently to ride him till you come at the resting place, where set him up very warm, and before you go to bed give him six spoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ*, and as much provender as he will eat ; the next Morning rub his Legs with Sheeps-feet oil, and it will bring fresh nimbleness to his limbs.

CCXXV. *Of Diseases in the Stomach, as Surfeits,
loathing of Meat or Drink.*

IF your Horse with the Glut of Provender, or eating raw food, hath given such offence to his stomach that he casteth up all he eateth or drinketh, you must then give him comfortable things; as Diapente or Trephenicon, in Ale or Beer, then keep him fasting; Let him have no food but what he eateth out of your hand; which should be bread well baked, Oats, and after two or three bits, a lock of sweet Hay, and his drink should be only new Milk, till his stomach have gotten strength; and in a bag you shall continually hang at his Nose sower brown bread steeped in Vinegar, at which he must ever smell, and his stomach will quickly come again to its first strength.

CCXXVI. *Of Foundering in the Body.*

FFoundering in the Body is of all Surfeits the mortalest and soonest gotten; it proceedeth from Intemperate riding an Horse when he is fat, and then suddenly suffering him to take cold; and there is nothing sooner brings this infirmity, than washing a fat Horse: The signs are, sadness of Countenance, staring hair, stiffness of Limbs, and loss of Belly: The cure is, only to give him wholesome meat, and bread of clean Beans, and warm drink, and for two or three Mornings together a quart of Ale brewed with Pepper and Cinamon, and a spoonful of Treacle.

CCXXVII.

CCXXVII. *Of the Hungry-evil.*

THe hungry-evil is an unnatural and over hasty greediness in an Horse to devour his meat faster than he can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat as if he would devour it whole : The cure is, to give him to drink Milk and Wheat-meal mixed together, a quart at a time, and to feed him with Provender by little and little till he forsake it.

CCXXVIII. *Of the Diseases of the Liver, as Inflammations, Obstructions, and Consumptions.*

THe Liver, which is the Vessel of blood, is subject to many Diseases, according to the Distemperature of the Blood : and the signs to know it, are a stinking Breath, and a mutual looking towards his body. The cure is, to take aristolochia longa, and to boil it in running water till half be consumed, and let the Horse drink continually thereof, and it will cure all Evils about the Liver.

CCXXIX. *Of the Diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellows.*

FROM the over-flowing of the Gall, which is the Vessel of Choler, spring many mortal Diseases, especially the Yellows, which is an extreme faint mortal sickness, if he be not prevented in time : The signs are, yellowness of the Eyes and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper Lip next to his Foreteeth, a sudden and faint falling down by the Highway, or in the Stable, and an universal sweat over all his

his body : The cure is, first to let the Horse blood in the Neck or Mouth, or under the Eyes ; then take two penny worth of Saffron, which being dried and made into fine powder, mix it with sweet Butter, and in manner of a Pill, give it in balls to the Horse three mornings together ; Let his drink be warm, and his Hay sprinkled with water.

CCXXX. *Another for the same.*

TAKE a pint or more of Milk, and make a Posset of it with strong Ale or Beer, a pint or more ; take off the Curd clean, then take two ounces of Casteel-soap, pare it in thin small slices, and boil it in the Posset-drink about a quarter of an hour ; then, when it is but luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink ; then take his back and ride a gentle pace an hour together, and set him up warm : This hath been often tryed upon Christians as well as Horses ; the taking and walking or stirring upon it an hour or more, taking it but two Mornings together, never fail'd of curing those that have been so far spent with it, that they had been given over by all Men.

CCXXXI. *Of the sickness of the Spleen.*

THE Spleen, which is the Vessel of Melancholy, when it is over charged therewith, groweth painful, hard and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible: The signs are much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to the left side only. The cure is, take Agrimony, and boil a good quantity thereof in the water the Horse shall drink, and chopping the leaves small, mix them with sweet Butter, and give the Horse two or three round Balls thereof in the manner of Pills.

CCXXXII.

CCXXXII. Of the Dropsy, or evil Habit of the Body:

THe Dropsy is an evil habit of the Body, which is ingendered by Surfeits, and unreasonable labour, altereth the colour and complexion of the Horse, and changeth the hairs in such an unnatural sort, that man shall hardly know the beast with which he hath been most familiar. The cure is, to take a handful or two of Wormwood, and boil it in Ale or Beer a quart or better, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm Morning and evening, and let him drink his water at noon,

CCXXXIII. Of the Cholic Belly-ach, or Belly-bound:

THe Cholic or Belly-ach, is a fretting, knawing or swelling of the belly or great bag, proceeding from windy humours, or from eating of green corn or pulse, hot grains without Salt or labour, or bread-dough backed: and Belly-bound is when a Horse cannot dung. The cure of the Cholic, or Belly-ach is, to take good store of the herb Dill, and boil it in his water that you give the Horse to drink: but if he cannot dung, then you shall boil in the water good store of the Herb Fumitory; and it will make him dung without danger of hurting.

CCXXXIV. Of the Lask, or Bloody-flux.

THe Lask or Bloody-flux is an unnatural looseness in a Horse's body, which being not stayed, will, for want of other excrements, make a Horse void blood only. The cure is, to take a handful of the Herb Shepherd's-purse, and boil it in a quart of strong Ale

Ale ; and when it is luke warm take the seeds of Woodroof, stamp them, and put them in, and give it the Horſe to drink.

CCXXXV. *Of the Falling out of the Fundament.*

THis cometh through infinite miſlike and weakneſs. The cure is, take Town-creſſes, and having dryed them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then ſtrew the powder thereon ; after it lay a little Honey thereon, and then ſtrew more of the powder with the powder of cummin, and it helpeth,

CCXXXVI. *Of Botts and Worms of all ſorts.*

THe Botts and knawing of worms is a grievous pain, and the ſigns to know them are, the Horſe's oft beating his Belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much deſire to lie on his back : The cure is, take the ſeeds bruifed of the Herb Ameos, and mix with it Honey, and make two or three Balls, and make the Horſe ſwallow them down.

CCXXXVII. *Of pain in the Kidneys ; pain to piſs, or the Stone.*

ALL theſe Diſeaſes ſpring from one ground, which is only Gravel and hard matter gathered together in the Kidneys, and ſo ſtoping the Conduit of the Urine : The ſigns are, that the Horſe will only ſtrain to Piſs, and that often, but cannot. The cure is, to take a handful of Maiden-hair, and ſteep it all night in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Horſe to drink every morning till he be well : This will break any ſtone whatſoever in a Horſe.

CCXXXVIII.

CCXXXVIII. *Of Pissing of Blood.*

THis cometh with over-travelling a Horse, or travelling him fore in the Winter when he goeth to grafs. The cure is, take Aristolochia Longa and boil it in a quart of Ale, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm, and give him also rest.

CCXXXIX. *Of the Strangullion.*

THis Disease is a forenefs in the Horse's Yard, and an hot burning when he pisseth : The signs are he will piss oft, yet but a drop or two at once : The cure is, to boil in the water he drinketh good store of the Herb Hogfennel, or Loveage, and it will cure.

CCXL. *Of the Cold-Evil, Muttering of the Yard, falling of the Yard, sheding of the Seed.*

ALL these Evils proceed from much Lust in a Horse ; and the cure is, the powder of the Herb Avens, and the leaves of Betony, stamp them well with White-wine to a moist Salve, and anoint the fore therewith, and it will heal all imperfections of the Yard : But if the Horse shed his seed, then beat Venice-Turpentine and Sugar together, and give him every Morning a good round ball thereof, till the seed stay.

CCXLI. *Of the particular Diseases in Mares, as barrenness, Consumption, rage of love, casting Foles, hardness to Fole, and how to make a Mare cast her Fole.*

IF you would have a Mare Barren, let good store of the Herb Agnus Castus be boiled in the water she drinks : If you would have her fruitful, then boil good store of Motherwort in the water : If she lose her belly, which sheweth a Consumption of the womb, you shall then give her a quart of Brine to drink, Mugwort being boiled therein : If your Mare through high keeping grow into extreme lust, so that she will neglect her food through the violence of fleshly appetite, as it is often seen amongst them, you shall house her for two or three days, and give her every Morning a ball of Butter and Agnus Castus chopt together : If you would have your Mare cast her Fole, take a handful of Betony and boil it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently : If she cannot Fole, take the Herb Horse-mints, and either dry it or stamp it, and take the powder or the juice, and mix it with strong Ale, and give it the Mare, and it will help her : If your Mare, from former bruises or strokes be apt to cast her Foles, as many are, you shall keep her at Grass very warm, and once a week give her a warm Mash of drink, this secretly knit-teth beyond expectation.

CCXLII.

CCXLII. *Of drinking Venom, as Horse-Leeches, Hen's-dung, &c.*

IF your Horse have drunk Horse-leeches, eaten Hen's dung, Feathers, or such-like venomous things, which you shall know by his panting, swelling, or scowring; you shall take the Herb Sowthistle, and drying it beat it into powder, and put three spoonfuls thereof into a pint of Ale, and give it to the Horse to drink.

CCXLIII. *Of Suppositories, Glisters, and Purgations.*

IF your Horse by sickness, strict Diet, and too vehement travel, grow dry and costive in his body, as it is ordinary, the easiest means in extremity to help him, is to give him a Suppository: the best of which is, to take a Candle of four in the pound, and cut off five Inches at the bigger end, thrusting it up a good way into his Fundament; presently clap down his Tail and hold it hard to his Tewel, for a quarter of an hour, or half an hour, and then give him liberty to dung: But if this be not strong enough, then you shall give him a Glistre. And that is, take four handfuls of the Herb Annise, and boil it in a pottle of running water till half be consumed; then take the Decoction and mix it with a pint of Sallad-oil, and a pretty quantity of Salt, and with a Glistre-pipe give it him at the Tewel But if it be too weak, then give him a Purgation, thus: Take twenty Raisins of the Sun stoned, and ten Figs slit; boil them in a pottle of running water till it come to a jelly, then mix it with the powder of Liquorish, Anniseed and Sugar-candy, till it be like

like Pafte, make it into Balls, and roll it in sweet Butter, and fo give it the Horfe to the quantity of three Hen's Eggs:

CCXLIV. *Of Neefings and Frictions.*

THere be two other excellent helps for fick Horfes; as Frictions and Neefings; The first to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vital powers are astonifhed; the other to purge the head when it is ftopt with phlegm, cold, and other thick humours: And of Frictions, the beft is Vinegar and patch-Greafe melted together, and very hot chafed into the Horfe's body againft the hair: And to make a Horfe Neefe, there is nothing better than to take a bunch of Pellitory of Spain, and tying it to a ftick put it up into the Horfe's Nostrils, and it will make him Neefe without hurt or violence.

CCXLV. *Of the Diseases in the Eyes, as watery Eyes, Blood-shotten Eyes, dim-Eyes, Moon-Eyes, strokes on the Eyes, Warts in the Eyes, Inflammation in the Eyes, Pearl, Pin or Web, or Haw in the Eye.*

UNto the Eye belongeth many Difcafes, all which have their true figns, and their names; And as touching that which is watery, blood-shotten, Dim, Moon ftricken or Inflamed, they have all one cure: Which is, to take Wormwood, beat it in a Mortar with the Gall of a Bull, ftrain it and anoint the Horfe's Eye therewith, and it is an approved remedy: But for a Wart, Pearl, Pin or Web, which are evils growing in or upon the Eyes: to take them off, take the juice of herb Betony, and wafh his eyes therewith, and it will wafte them away: For the Haw, every Smith can cut it out.

CCXLVI.

CCXLVI. *Of the Impostume in the Ear, Poll-evil, Fistula, swelling after Blood-letting, any Galled back, Canker in the Withers, Setfast, Wens, Navel-Gall, or any hollow Ulcer.*

THese Diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no other description but their names: and the most certain cure is, to take Clay of a mud or Loam-wall, straws and all, and boil it in strong Vinegar, and apply it Plaisterwise to the Sore, and it will of its own nature search to the botton and heal it, provided that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, you eat or cut it away.

CCXLVII. *Of the Vives.*

FOR the Vives, which is an Inflammation of the Kernels between the chap and the neck of the Horse, Take a penny-worth of Pepper, Swine's-grease a spoonful, the juice of a handful of Rue, Vinegar two spoonfuls: mix them together, and then put it equally into both the Horse's Ears, then tie them up with two flat Laces, shut the Ears that the Medicine may go down; which done, let the Horse blood in the neck and in the Temple-veins, and it is a certain cure.

CCXLVIII. *Of the strangle, or any boil or Botch, or other Imposthume whatsoever.*

ALL these Diseases are of one nature, being only hard boils or Imposthumes, gathered together by evil humours, either between the chaps or elsewhere on the body: The cure is, take Southern-wood and
R dry

dry it to powder, and with Barly-meal and the yolk of an Egg make it into a Salve, and lay it to the Imposthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

CCXLIX. Of the Canker in the Nose, or any other part of the Body.

TO heal any Canker in what part soever it be; take the juice of Plantain, as much Vinegar, and the same weight of the powder of Allum, and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it, and cure it.

CCL. Of Stanching of blood, whether it be at the Nose, or proceeding from any Wound.

IF your Horse bleed violently at the Nose, and you cannot stanch it, then you shall take Betony, and stamp it in a Mortar with Salt, and put it into the Horse's Nose, or apply it to the Wound, and it will stanch it; but if he be suddenly taken in riding by the High-way, or otherwise, and you cannot get this Herb, you shall then take any Woollen-cloth, or any Felt-hat, and with a Knife scrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the place bleeding, and it will stop.

CCLI. Of pain in the Teeth, or loose Teeth.

FOR any pain in the Teeth, take Betony, and seeth it in Ale or Vinegar till half be consumed, and wash all the Gums therewith; but if they be loose, then only rub them with the leaves of Enulacampana, or Horse-holm, and it will fasten them.

CCLII. *Of Diseases in the Mouth, as Blood-Rifts, Liggs, Lamprass, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-burnt, or the Barbes.*

IF you find any infirmity in the Horse's mouth, as the bloody-Rifts, which are chaps or Rifts in the Palate of the Horse's Mouth ; the Liggs, which are little Pustulas, or Bladders within the Horse's Lips ; the Lamprass, which is an excrescence of flesh above the Teeth ; the Camery, which are little Warts in the Roof of the Mouth ; Inflammation, which is little Blisters ; Barbes, which are two little Paps under the Tongue : Or any hurt on the Tongue by the Bit or otherwise ; you shall take the leaves of Wormwood, and the leaves of Surewort, and beat them in a Mortar, with a little Honey, and with it anoint the Sores, and it will heal them. As for the Lampra's, they must be burned.

CCLIII. *Of the Crick in the Neck.*

FOr the Crick in the Neck, you shall first chafe it with the Friction mentioned in Receipt CCXLIV. and then anoint and bathe it with Soap and Vinegar mixed together.

CCLIV. *Of the falling of the Crest, Manginess in the Main, or the Shedding of the Hair.*

ALL these Diseases proceed from Poverty, Mistle, or over-riding ; and the best cure for the falling of the Crest is Blood-letting, or good keeping, with good store of meat ; for strength and fatness will ever raise the Crest : But if the Mane be mangy, you shall

anoint it with Butter and Brimstone: And if the Hair fall away, then take Southernwood and burn it to Ashes: then take the Ashes, and mix them with common Oil; anoint the place therewith, and it will bring Hair presently, both smooth, thick, and fair.

CCLV. Of pain in the Withers.

AN Horse's Withers are subject to many Grievs and Swellings, which proceed from cold humors, sometimes from bad Saddles; therefore if at any time you see any Swellings about them, you shall take the Herb Harts-tongue, and boil it with Oil of Roses, and apply it very hot to the Sore, and it will assuage it, or else break it and heal it.

CCLVI. Of Swaying the Back, or Weakness in the back.

THese two infirmities are very dangerous, and may be eased, but never absolutely cured; therefore where you find them, Take Coleworts and boil them in Oil, and mix them with a little Bean-flour, and chafe it into the Back, and it will strengthen it.

CCLVII. Of the Itch in the Tail, or the general Scab or Manginess, or of the Farcy.

FOr any of these Diseases, take fresh Grease and yellow Arsenick, mix them together, and where the Manginess or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the Sore being made raw before; but if it be for the Farcion, then with a Knife slit all the Knots, both hard and soft, and then rub in the Medicine: which done, tie up the Horse, so that he may not come to bite

bite himself; after he hath stood an hour or two, take old Piss and Salt boiled together, and with it wash away the Ointment, and then put him to meat: Do this two or three days together; provided always, that you first let the Horse bleed, and take good store from him, and give him every Morning a strong Scouring, or a strong purge, both which are shewed before.

CCLVIII. *Of Foundring in the Feet.*

THere be two sorts of Foundring, a dry and a wet; The dry is incurable, the wet is thus to be cured and helped; First, pare all the Soles of his Feet, so thin, that you may see the quick; then let him bleed at every Toe, and let him bleed well; then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rosin; and having tackt on hollow shoes on his Feet, stop them with Bran, Tar, and Tallow, as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a Week together: then Exercise him much, and his Feet will come to their true use and nimbleness.

CCLIX. *Of any halting which cometh by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the shoulder or hip down to the hoof.*

THere are many Infirmities which make an Horse halt, as pricking the Shoulder, a wrench in the nether joints, splatting the Shoulder, Shoulder-pight, strains in joints, and such like; all which, since they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of some slip or strain, so they may be cured by one Medicine, and it is thus. After you have found where the grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every several Member, and there where he most complaineth, there is his most pain and

grief; you shall take Vinegar, Bolearmoniack, the Whites of Eggs, and Bean-flour, and having beaten them into a perfect Salve, lay them very hot to the fore place, and 'twill cure it.

CCLX. Of the Splent, Curb, bone-Spavin, or any Knob, or bony Excretion, or Ring-bone.

A Splent is a bony Excretion under the Knee or the Fore-leg. The Curb is the like behind the hinder Hough. The Spavin is the like on the inside of the hinder Hough; and the Ring-bone is the like on the corner of the Hoof. And the cure is, First, upon the top of the Excretion make a slit with your Pen-knife, the length of a Barley-corn or little more, and then, with a fine Cornet, raise the skin from the bone, and having made it hollow the compass of the Excretion and no more, take a little Lint and dip it in the Oil of Origanum, and thrust it into the hole, and cover the Knob, and so let it abide till you see it rot, and that nature casteth out both the Medicine and the cure. As for the Ring-bone, you shall need to do no more but scarify it, and anoint it with the Oil only.

CCLXI. Of the Mallender, Selander, Pains, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crown-scabs, and such like.

FOr any of these, you shall take Verdegrease, and soft Grease, and Grind them together to an Ointment, put it in the Box by itself; Then take Wax, Hog's-grease and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put this Salve into another Box: then when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab and made it raw, you shall anoint

anoint it with the green Salve of Verdegrease and fresh Grease only for two or three days; it is a sharp Salve, and will kill the Cankerous humour; then when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two parts of the yellow Salve, and one part of the green Salve, and mix them together, and anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker, as you shall find occasion.

CCLXII. *Of any upper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by over reaching.*

THese Attaints are Strokes or Knots, by over-reaching, either on the Back Sinew of the Fore-leg, on the Heels or nether joints, and may be healed safely by the former Medicine, which healed the Mallender or Selander in the former Receipt; Only for the over reaches, you shall before you apply the Salve, lay the Sore plain open without hollownes, and wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt.

CCLXIII. *Of Wind-gauls.*

THese are little Blebs, or small soft swellings on each side the Fetlock, procured by much travel on hard and stony ways: The cure is, to prick them and let out the Jelly, and then dry the Sore with a Plaister of Pitch.

CCLXIV. *Of interfering or Shackle-gauls, or any Gaulings.*

INterfering is striking one Leg against another, and shaving off the skin; It proceedeth from weak-

ness and straitness of the Horse's pace ; and Shackle-gauling is any gauling under the Fetlock : The cure is, to anoint them with Turpentine and Verdegrease mixed together, or Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much.

CCLXV. Of the infirmities of Hoofs, as false Quarters, loose Hoofs, and Hoof-bound, Hoof-running, Hoof-brittle, Hoof-burt, Hoof-soft, Hoof-hard, or generally to preserve Hoofs.

THE Hoof is subject to many infirmities. As first, to half quarters, which cometh by pricking, and must be helpt by good shoeing, where the shoe must bear on every part of the Foot but upon the half quarters only. If the Horse be loose, anoint it with Burgundy-pitch, and it will knit it ; if it be clean cut off, then Burgundy-pitch and Tallow molten together, will bring a new ; if it be bound or straightned, it must be well opened at the Heels, the Soal kept moist, and the Cornet anointed with the fat of Bacon and Tar ; if the frush of the Foot run with stinking matter, it must be stopped with Soot, Turpentine, and Bolearmoniack mixed together ; if it be brittle and broken, then anoint it with Pitch and Linseed-oil molten to a soft Salve ; if it be soft, then stop it with Soap and the Ashes of a burnt Felt mixed together ; if the Hoofs be hard, lay hot burnt Cinders upon them, and then stop them with Tow and Tallow. And generally for the preserving of all good Hoofs, rub them daily with a piece of Bacon.

CCLXVI.

CCLXVI. *Of the Blood-spavin, or Hough-bony, or any other unnatural Swelling, from what cause soever it proceedeth.*

THese two are Pustules, or soft round Swellings; the first is of the inside of the hinder Hough, and the other on the very huckle of the Hough they are soft and very sore: The cure is, first to bind up the Vein above, and let it bleed only from below; then having tied it fast with two Shoemaker's ends on both sides, then slit the Vein in two pieces, then take Linseed and bruise it in a Mortar, mix it with Cow-dung, and heat it in a Frying-pan, and so apply it to the swelling only: and if it break and run, then heal it with a Plaister of Pitch, and the Horse will never be troubled with a spavin more. But if the Swelling come by strain or bruise, then take Pitch-grease and melt it, anoint the Sore therewith, holding a hot Iron near it to sink in the Grease, then fold a Linnen cloth about it, and it will assuage all swellings whatsoever.

CCLXVII. *Of Wounds in the Feet, as Gravelling, Pricking, Fig, Retrait, or Cloying.*

IF your Horse have any Wound in his Foot, by what mischance soever, you shall first search it, to see if it be clear of any Nail points, or other Splent to annoy it, then wash it very well with White-wine and Salt, and after tent it with the Ointment called Egyptianum, and then lay hot upon the tent, Flax or Hards, with Turpentine, Oil and Wax mingled together, and anoint all the Hoof on the top and Cornet, with Bole-armoniack and Vinegar: do this twice a day till the Sore be whole.

CCLXVIII.

CCLXVIII. *Hurts on the Cornet, as the Quitter-bone
or Matlong.*

THe Quitter-bone is a hollow Ulcer on the top of the Cornet, and so is the Matlong; And the cure is, first to tent it with Verdegreafe till you have eaten out the core, and made the Wound clean, then you shall heal it up with the same Salve that you heal the Scratches.

CCLXIX. *To draw out a Stub or Thorn.*

TAke the Herb Ditany, and bruise it in a Mortar with black Soap, and lay it to the sore, and it will draw out the Splint, Iron or Thorn.

CCLXX. *Of the Anbury, or Tetter.*

THe Anbury is a bloody wart on any part of the Horse's body, and the Tetter is a Cankorous Ulcer like it. The cure of both, is an hot Iron, to sear the one plain to the body, and to scarify the other: then take the juice of Plantain and mix it with Vinegar, Honey, and the powder of Allum, and with it anoint the sore till it be whole.

CCLXXI. *Of the cords, or string-bait.*

THis is an unnatural binding of the Sinews, which imperfection a Horse brought into the World with him, and therefore it is certain it is incurable, and not painful, but an Eye-sore: yet the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbs in the Decoction of Cole-wort.

CCLXXII.

CCXLXII. Of broken Bones, or Bones out of joint.

AFTER you have placed the Bones in the true place, take the Root of Osmond and beat it in a Mortar with the Oil of Swallows, and anoint all the Member therewith: then splent it, and roll it up, and in fifteen days the Bones will knit and be strong.

CCLXXIII. Of venemous Wounds, or Biting of a Mad Dog, Tushes of a Boar, Serpents, or such like.

FOR any of these Mortal or Venemous Wounds, take Yarrow, Calamint, and the Grains of Wheat, and make it into a Salve, and lay it to the Sore, and it will heal it safely.

READER,

HERE followeth the RECEIPTS and EXPERIENCE of GEORGE JEFFERIES, of Bradford, Chester County, and Province of Pennsylvania, and Others, who are allow'd to be the ablest Farriers in America, as well as that of a Number of Discreet Indians; and as I have both proved them myself, and saw him, Jefferies, perform many of them with Success, can therefore recommend them as extreamly serviceable. Altho' the foregoing Receipts in this Book will do Abundance of good, Yet the following Experience may, in some Sort, be accounted more natural, as the Productions are both of the same Clime, and consequently nearer connected; that is, the Creatures in Distress, and the Herbs and Vegetables for their Relief.

I am, thy Friend and Well-wisher,

J. M.

CCLXXIII. *A most certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatsoever.*

TAKE Mastick and Frankincense, Cloves, green coperas and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, and Myrrh double so much as any of the others; beat all to powder, then burn it on a Chaffing dish of Coals, but let it not flame; then as the smoak ariseth take a good handful of Lint or fine hards, and hold it over the smoak so that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it; then when it is thoroughly well perfumed put the Lint or hards into a very close Box, and so keep it for use.

N. B. Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore with Urine and Vinegar made warm; then dry it, and lastly lay on some of this Lint or hards, and thus do twice a Day, and it is a speedy and most infallible Cure. *Proved.*

CCLXXIV. *For the Stone.*

TAKE a quart of old clear cyder, and set it over the fire, then take a large onion, or two middling ones, cut them small and put them into the cyder; let it boil a while, then take it off and strain it, then give it the horse to drink, luke-warm. Do thus as often as occasion require, and it will cure. *Proved.*

CCLXXV. *To Conglutarate any broken inward Member, or broken Vein.*

TAKE of dragant saffron, and the fruit of the pine, the yolk of eggs, mixed with wine and oil; this given a horse to drink, will heal any inward member, or broken vein. *Proved.*

CCLXXVI. *For the Bloody Flux.*

TAKE the herb call'd shepherd's purse, and tanners bark out of the pitt, and cumminseed, bruise it and

and boil it in a quart of wine or cyder, the cyder must be old ; so give the horse luke-warm. *Proved.*

CCLXXVII. *For the Stone, or a Horse that Can't piss.*

TAKE a quart of strong ale and put it into half a gallon vessel, then take horse-reddishes wash'd clean, bruise them, and put them into the ale ; cover and stop the vessel so that no air come in ; let it stand twenty-four hours ; then squeeze it and strain it, and give the horse : ride him after, and he will stale ; you must do this divers mornings. *Proved.*

CCLXXVIII. *Another for the same.*

TAKE an onion, or more, and steep it in wine, and give it your horse, and it will make him piss immediately ; present ease for the stranguary ; forces away sand, gravel, stones, and tartarous matter, from the urinary parts. *Proved.*

CCLXXIX. *For a horse that pisses blood.*

TAKE a quart of new milk and put into it liquorish, anniseed, garlick, Sallad oil and honey, of each half an ounce, well bruised, and give it the horse, and it is a soveraign help. Boil live honey to a thick salve, and it is an excellent suppository for many inward diseases. Box-tree leaves and hempseed, beaten to powder, and sulphur of brimstone, mixt with oats, is an exceeding thing to give to a horse for to digest humours, and to keep him clean and from worms.

Proved.

CCLXXX. *For the Mad Itch.*

First bleed in the Neck ; then take strong lie and vinegar and boil it ; then add to it gunpowder and coperas ; make it very strong, then tie a clout

to a stick and wash the horse where the sores are, and it never faileth of a cure; you may wash with sower butter milk and soot of the Chimney, mixed together, and it has cured.

CCLXXXI. For the Crick in the Neck.

First shave off the Hair at the roots of the ears and at the setting on of the head; then take of the oil of spike, or the oil of petre, and rub or anoint his neck well with it, and especially the joints at the setting on of the head; then take wet litter or wet hay and make a thumb rope, and wrap it all round his neck, from his ears to his withers, and let it continue for forty-eight hours: be sure you make your thumb Rope pretty big, and bind it pretty close together; twice thus doing will be a cure. It would not be a misse if you were to bleed in the mouth between the second and third furrow. *Proved.*

CCLXXXII. Diseases of the Gall.

Bleed in the neck vein; then give the purge for foundering in the body; for the fundament fallen out, wash it well with allum water, and put it up again.

CCLXXXIII. For the heat in the mouth.

Jag the upper lip with a Lance, and wash it with vinegar and Salt mixt together; then give him the purge of aloes for a foundered horse. *Proved.*

CCLXXXIV. For the headache.

Prick in the mouth, between the second and third bar, with the end of your cornet horn, or with a pen knife; let him bleed well, and let him stand twelve hours; then pour into his nostrils wine or vinegar,

gar, having before some frankincense; let his diet be moist and cooling, and he will soon recover; if it be in the winter keep him warm. *Proved.*

CCLXXXV. To drive back Humours.

TAKE vinegar, salt, bolearmoniack, beaten together, and lay it on the sore; or white lead and sallad-oil; or red lead and sallad-oil. *Proved.*

CCLXXXVI. For the Stranguary.

TAKE a quart of new milk, and put into it a quarter of a pound of sugar, and give it your horse six mornings; and let his food be warm and comfortable, such as bursten oats, mashe made of malt and bran; give him warm water to drink. *Proved.*

CCLXXXVII. For the consumption of the Liver.

TAKE of sulphur, and of myrrh, one penny weight of each, pound them to fine powder; then take a new laid egg and bray them well together; then put it into a pint of good wine, and brew it well; being luke-warm give it your horse fasting.

N. B. Seperate such horses from sound ones, for it is infectious. *Proved.*

CCLXXXVIII. For the loosening of the Hoofs.

TAKE of eggs, and to every egg a spoonful of honey, and to every two eggs the powder of rosin as much as will lay on the point of a case knife; work them all together, and thicken it with wheat meal; then heat it just warm and apply it plaister-wise. *Proved.*

CCXXXIX. For kib'd heels.

TAKE of wine lees, mixt with soap like an ointment,

ointment, and then dress the sores therewith, and it will in forty-eight hours heal any mules, pains and scratches whatsoever; the leaves and roots of elder is good to dry up any of those evil humours. *Proved.*

CCXC. *For Sinews that are stiff and much bruised.*

TAKE of black soap a pound, and seethe it in a quart of strong ale till it be as thick as a salve; then reserve it, and when you shall see cause anoint the sinews and joints therewith, and it will Supple them and stretch them forth although they be never so much shrunk. *Proved.*

CCXCI. *For a Strain.*

TAKE smallage, ox-eye and sheep's suet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together and boil it in old urine; bathe the strain therewith, then with hay ropes, wet with cold water, roll up his leg that is strained, and he will be able to travel the next day.

N. B. Hay ropes boil'd in old urine, I have known to cure a strain. Or thus, take of milk and boil it, then put as much salt into it as will turn it to a curd; then strain it and apply the curd to the strain, and bind it on, renewing it every day, and it will cure any old sinew-strain. N. B. The scum of salts sod in old urine will cure any windgall.

-----Soap and stone lime is accounted one of the strongest causticks that is, by being mixed together.

CCXCII. *For the Tongue hurt with the Bitt.*

TO prevent it, let your bitt be bright and smooth, noways rusty, and wash it often with liquorish, honey and salt, or beer; but if hurt, then wash the tongue with allum-water, or the juice of black bramble leaves. *Proved.*

CCXCIII.

CCXCHII. *For a Wind-gall.*

First shave off the hair, then get the inner bark of white-walnut, as soon as it is off the tree, and clap it to the wind-gall and there bind it on, and let it abide on for twenty-four hours; whilst that remains, you should boil some of the bark in running water, and teem the liquor on the wind-gall so as the bark may not dry; at the end of twenty-four hours take the bark from the wind-gall, and anoint it with fresh butter or hog's grease, and it is a cure.

CCXCIV. *A certain excellent Cure for any Strain either hidden or apparent.*

TAke of red rod, or what the english call the dog-berry-tree, by some its called red willow, it grows commonly in most meadows, and by creek sides; there are two sorts, that that has the broadest leaf is accounted the strongest; scrape off the bark and boil it in spring water, then bathe the grieved place therewith, and take of the bark, thus boiled, and apply it to a strain as you would a poultis, and let it remain twelve hours; you must also, if the strain be great, give of the liquor inwardly, by wetting the bran or other food he eats with the boil'd liquor; and by thus doing it is a certain cure in a week's time, let the strain be never so great.

CCXCV. *For swelled or goured Legs.*

THere is nothing better for a horse when his legs are swelled or goured than that you ride him twice a day to some running stream, and there let him stand a quarter of an hour, or that you wash his legs well, with the coldest water, in the stable twice a day at the least.

CCXCVI. *For a sinew-strain.*

TAKE of oil de bay, oil of nerve, and Aqua vitæ, mix't together, rub and chafe the strain therewith, and it will cure it; or thus, take a thumb band of hay and wind round the Horse's leg, then take of the coldest water you can get, and teem it on the hay for a quarter or half an hour successively, twice in twenty-four hours; then when they hay is dry take it off. I have known it cure strains newly taken. *Proved.*

CCXCVII. *For the running of the Frush.*

TAKE allum and old urine, warm it hot, then wash and cleanse the foot, then dry the fore with a linnen-cloth; then take some nettles and dry them, and pound them to powder; then take some pepper and pound it, and mix it with the powder of nettles, and strew it into the wound, and stop it in with flax or hards. *Proved.*

CCXCVIII. *For the Nether-joint or any Strain.*

TAKE wheat flower or meal, the clay of a wall and wine lees, all mixt together, and spread a plaister thereof and put it on the strain, renewing it once in twenty-four hours; and for a new strain twice is a cure; the clay must have no lime in it. *N. B.* The clay alone boil'd in the wine is a speedy cure for any sinew-strain. *Proved.*

CCXCIX. *Of the Fig.*

IF a horse has received any hurt either by stubb, nail, thorn, bone, splint or stone, either in the sole or any other part of the foot, and not well dressed or perfectly cured, there will grow in the place
a cer-

a certain superfluous piece of flesh like unto a fig, full of little white grains, as you see in a fig; the cure is, first with a hot Iron to cut the fig clean away, and keep the flesh down with Turpentine, hog's grease and a little wax, molten together, laid in the fore, with a little tow stopping the hole hard, that the flesh rise not, dressing it once a day till it be whole; or thus, after you have cut clean away the fig, then take the tops of young Nettles and chop them very small, then lay them upon a cloth, just as big as the fig, then take the powder of verdegrease and strew it upon the chopt nettles, and so bind it to the wound; thus dress it once a day until the hoof has covered the fore, and it is a most certain cure.

CCC. For sore Eyes.

THe juice of onions is excellent good to wash sore eyes, takes away dimness, mists, clouds, spots, haws. If used in the beginning, dropt in the ears, it is good against deafness, noise or ringing in them; the juice mixt with oil and the juice of pennyroyal, applied, is good against all Burnings with fire or gun-powder, and heals wounds made by gun-shot. Proved.

CCCI. How to burn Salt.

TAke a good quantity of white salt, and lap it hard up in a wet cloth; then put it into a hot fire, and there burn it to a red coal; then take it out and open it, and there will be in the middle a white core as big as a bean, or bigger; then beat that core to powder, and put it in some white-wine or clear cyder, shake it and let it stand to settle again; then pour the clear off, and wash the eye with it once a day; after you wash, put some of the thick into

the Eye, and is is a certain remedy for a pearl, pin or spot; the powder of flint finely searsed is very good, blow'd through a quill; or the powder of oyster-shells.
Proved.

CCCII. *For the Canker in the Eye.*

First bleed in the temple vein, then take of burnt allum and green copperas, and bake it together on some stone or iron; then powder it, and add as much honey as will bring it to an ointment; then anoint the fores with a feather dipt in the ointment, and it will kill the canker. *N. B.* The yolks of eggs and white-wine vinegar is an extraordinary plaister, being thickned with a little wheat meal or rye flower, for any wound in the foot or else where; the powder of Diapente and hartshorn, brew'd in ale or wine, is excellent against poison or venom; rue, in milk and fallad oil, also is good against poison; white-oak acorn cups, dry'd to powder and given to a horse in Bran, will stop watery humours running under the belly; or allum water, the bran being wet therewith.
Proved.

CCCIII. *A most approved Cure for Blindness.*

TAke vermilion, betony and lavender, pound them in a mortar till they come to a thick salve or paste; then make it into cakes three quarters of an inch diameter, and dry them and lay them on some coals, in a pot or dish, and cover it with a funnel, and then let the smoak go up his nostrils; do this morning and evening; always when you fume him wash his eyes with the water of eyebright, and the juice of groundivy.
Proved.

CCCIV. *Another for the same.*

TAke six egg-shells, clean them from the inward thin skin; then lay them between two clean tiles on hot glowing embers, covering the tiles very close; let them lie till the shells be well dried; then take them off and beat the shells to fine powder, searse them thro' a fine lawn rag, and with a quill blow it into the eye that hath the pin, web or film, or any thickness or foulness. Doing this morning or evening is a certain cure.

CCCV. *For dimnejs of Sight, or blindnefs, if the Ball of the eye be found.*

TAKE May butter, rosemary, yellow wax and celandine, stamp them all together, fry them in a pan, and then Strain it and put it in a box and keep it close; it is excellent for sore eyes: Or thus, take an empty egg-shell, fill it with bay-salt, and burn it black, and take as much burnt allum as the bigness of your thumb; bray them together with fresh butter to an ointment; then with a feather anoint the sore eye, and put some flax, dipt in the white of an egg, over the eye, once a day, for a week, and once in the two days after; it is most excellent for a film or pearl. Proved.

CCCVI. *Another.*

TAKE an egg, and make a hole in the top of it, and put out one half of the white, then fill up with salt and ginger, well mixt, and lap it in a wet cloth, and put it into the fire and rost it very hard; then take it out and beat it to powder; when you use it first, wash the eye with the water of eyebright and the juice of groundivy; then with a quill blow in the powder. This is a certain remedy.

CCCVII. *For purfick or broken wind.*

TAKE of liquorishball one ounce, dissolve it in one gallon of spring or running water: give your horse one pint thereof every morning, and take barley or wheat, and grow it until you see the cheat or beard begin to spring, and give it your horse, two or three quarts at a time; if you mix a little good wine with your liquoroish water it would be much the better; be sure you sprinkle the hay he eats with fair water, and it is a certain remedy. *N. B.* If you have a mind to stop the heaving of his lungs for a few hours, you may take a quart of new milk, and put into it a good handful of his own dung, stir it and give it the horse, but let him have no cold water or any drink; this will stop it for a few hours, perhaps a day.

CCCVIII. *A never failing Cure for any Cold, Cough, Hoarsness, Wheefings, &c. in Man or Beast.*

TAKE onions, bake them in their skins until they are quite soft; then take the pulp and add to it fresh butter and salt, and so give the horse fasting three or four mornings together roll'd up in balls. For a man, eaten with bread in the morning fasting, it is a cure for any hoarsness.

CCCIX. *For a Cold in the Head, or Glanders.*

TAKE brimstone and make a match thereof, then get a bag and draw it over the horse's head, and light the match and fume the horse up his Nostrils; do thus for three days together; then bleed in the neck vein, and give him this drink. Take of vinegar one gill, and two or three new laid eggs, mixed well together, and give it the horse in the Morning fasting,

ing, and ride him half a mile after he has taken it ; be sure you rub his pole well with goose grease, for it is excellent for any thing of that kind.-----Tar and sweet oil, mixt together, and tied to the bitts, is very good for a cough.

CCCX. For a dry overgrown Cold or Cough.

TAKE forty grains of pepper, four or five roots of horse-raddish, four heads of english garlick, for want thereof six or seven of common ; pound them together, then take five ounces of sweet butter, and work all well together, and make it into balls ; give the horse one ball every morning fasting for a week together, either in, or washing the ball down with, beer or Cyder, making him fast full two hours after he has taken a ball, and surely it is a most approved medicine for any old cold or cough.

CCCXI. For the Yellows.

BY the signs before in this book recited, in this disease, a horse will drop down on a journey : At all times when it happens, immediately take out your knife and prick him in the third bar in the mouth, and let him bleed a full gallon ; then give him half an ounce of diapente in a quart of strong beer, and is a present remedy. If you can't get diapente, be sure you get some comfortable cordial.

CCCXII. For Costiveness or Belly-bound.

IF your horse is not very bad, you shall only rake him, and gallop him till he sweats, and then give a handful or two of clean rye, with a little brimstone mixt with it ; but if bad and violent, then take a quarter of a pound of soap, a handful of spurge, and a handful of hempseed, bray them all together,

together, and give it to the horse in a quart of new ale, luke-warm; then mount and ride him a full hour after. Give him warm water and warm mashes for a few days after, and the horse will recover.

CCCXIII. *For a Farcy.*

First bleed in those veins that doth most feed the farcy; then give him this drink: Take of aloes, one ounce, and boil it in three pints of water until it come to a quart; then add to it one gill of melasses, soft soap as much, of yeast half a gill, and give the horse luke-warm. Ride him both before and after, and keep him warm for two or three days until the physick has done working. *P.*

CCCXIV. *For the tetter.*

A Tetter is a filthy kind of ulcer like unto a canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remain between the skin and the flesh like a knotted farcy, and will not break. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of ancient farriers, is to make a strong lee with old Urine, ashes and green copperas, and bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. *P.*

CCCXV. *A certain Cure for a Sinew-strain.*

TAKE one pint of wine lees, put it over the fire, then take of mud-wall straws, and all that has no lime in, and put it to the wine lees, and boil it to the consistency of a salve; then clap it on hot to the strain, and this doing once or twice is a perfect cure.

CCCXVI.

CCCXVI. *The master Medicine for any Wind-Gall, Sinenw-strain, Blood-spavin, Splint, Curb, &c.*

FIRST shave off the hair, then take of contharides, which is a fly the apothecaries make their blister-plasters of, half a quarter of an ounce, mixed with a little nerve oyl; spread that upon the grieved part, and tie the horse up eight or ten hours till it has done working. Next morning squeeze out the water with your finger and thumb; but take care not to break the skin. If you think once does not do, the next day spread on some more, and do as before directed, and twice certainly will perfect the cure.-----It is best to spread the medicine on the grievance thin; two or three days after anoint it with fallad oil, or fresh butter, or neatsfoot oil, and it is a perfect cure.

CCCXVII. *For Wind-Galls.*

THEY are very apparent about the fetlock joints of an over-riden horse; first open the wind-gall with a lancet, making the orifice no bigger than the jelly may come out, and then squeeze it a little to send it away; then take a wet woollen cloth and lap on the wound, and take a Taylor's hot goose, and so press upon the wet cloth until it suck up all the moisture from the windgall and is quite dry; then take of pitch, rosin and mastick, of each a like quantity, melt them together, and daub it over the windgall very hot, and then clap on good store of shearman's flocks, and there let it abide till it comes off of its own accord, and the windgall will be gone and cured.

CCCXVIII.

CCCXVIII. *For a desperate strain that has been a long time, and imagined to be past cure, the sinews and swelling being bony, hard and knotted.*

TAKE piece greafe, which is made of shoe-maker's threads, and melt it on the fire; then anoint and bathe the strain therewith very hot, and with your hand rub it well in; then hold a hot bar of iron against the strain, to make the medicine sink in, and take a linnen roller and gently roll it up; do this once a day and it will take away the most desperate strain that may be.

CCCXIX. *For the Crown Scab.*

IT grows in a cankerous matter on the cronet and on the heels; the cure is to wash it well with vinegar or old urine, and then take dog's greafe, bolearmoniack and turpentine, well mixed, and apply it to the sore, and let the horse come to no wet, and this will cure.

The powder of honey and lime, or turpentine simply of itself, will dry and skin any wound.----- Take turpentine, honey, hog's greafe, wax and sheep's suet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and boil it to a salve, and it will heal any wound.

CCCXX. *For a Strain in the Stifle.*

TAKE of the oil of turpentine, one ounce of linseed oil, as much of oil of peter, as much of olive oil, as much of oil origanum, half an ounce of oil debay, and nerve oil half an ounce; shake them well together, and anoint the grieved place once in twelve hours, and with your hand rub it well in, and it will take away his lameness in forty-eight hours.

CCCXXI.

CCCXXI. For the Mange.

FIRST bleed in the neck once or twice ; then with a card rub or card the scurf off him ; then take of tar, turpentine and linseed oil, a quantity as you think proper ; incorporate them well together, being hot (but not to scald) anoint the mangy places therewith ; once doing is a cure. *N. B.* Let not your saddle or collar that was upon a mangy horse go on any other, for it will quickly give it a sound horse, being an infectious disease.

CCCXXII. For a Sinew-strain.

TAKE a quart of milk, set it on the fire, and when it boils put as much salt into the milk as will turn it to a hard curd, then clap it on hot to the strain, and there bind it, renewing it once in twelve hours, and this will cure it. *N. B.* If you was to wash or bathe the strain with warm vinegar, before you put on the curd, it would hasten the cure.

CCCXXIII. For a Horse new galled with a Saddle or Collar.

AS soon as you take either the saddle or collar off, wash the galled place with water and salt, or urine and salt, and then sprinkle upon it wood ashes, or wall mud, which is the best. If you was to get the root of the herb clownswort, and burn it to a coal, not to ashes, and pound it to a powder, and, after washing the sore, strew on some of the powder, it will quickly heal the galls altho' they be almost rotten and putrified. *N. B.* The more you ride or work a horse that is galled, the sooner he will heal ; but be sure you keep your saddle or collar from the sore.

CCCXXIV.

CCCXXIV. *A fine Poultice for a new Strain.*

TAKE a pint of sharp vinegar, white-wine is the best, one pound of fresh butter, seeth the vinegar and butter together, then thicken it with as much wheat bran as will bring it to a paste, and put it as hot as possible on the strain, and it will cure it.

CCCXXV. *For a Swelling in any part of the Head.*

TAKE some of his own dung as soon as he maketh it; clap it on hot, and bind it fast, and it will take it down. If it require, renew it twice a day.

CCCXXVI. *For an old Ulcer in Man or Beast.*

TAKE three quarts of new milk, a good handful of white plantain, and set it on the fire and let it boil till a pint is consum'd; then take three ounces of allum, and one ounce and half of white sugar-candy, pound them both to fine powder and put it into the milk and plantain, and set it again upon the fire and let it boil a little till it come to a curd; then strain it, and with the whey, being warm'd, bathe the ulcer; then dry the wound and lay on some unguentum basilicon; this drieth, cleanseth and killeth any itch, and healeth the foulest ulcers either in man or beast that may be.-----Also, if you take of milk one quart, of allum powder two ounces, of vinegar a spoonful, and when the milk doth seethe, then put in the allum and vinegar; then take away the curd and use the rest, and this will dry up and heal any foul old sore whatsoever.

CCCXXVII. *For the Scratches.*

FIRST clip away the hair, then rub the fores
till

till they be raw, wash them with old urine, allum and salt, as hot as possible it can be borne; then take the tops and buds of elder and green bryar berries, and boil them in a pottle of sweet wort, and put thereunto good store of allum, and being very hot, wash his legs two or three times, and it is a certain cure.

CCCXXVIII. *An approved and certain method to take away any splint.*

TAKE the root of elecampane, wash it clean, then lap it up in wet brown paper and roast it in hot embers till it be well done, but take care you do not burn it; then rub and chafe the splint, and as hot as the horse can bear clap this root right on the splint, and bind it fast, and in two or three dressings it will consume it quite. I would not have you lay it on so hot as lo scald.----Also if you rub the splint with the oil of origanum, morning and evening, it will take it away.

CCCXXIX. *How to make the powder of Honey.*

TAKE such a quantity of unslact lime as you think fit, made into a fine powder, then take as much honey as shall suffice to mingle it together, and make it to a stiff paste; then make it into a thick cake or loaf, and put the same into an hot oven or a strong fire, and let it abide until it be baked or burnt red; then take it out, and when cold pound it to a very fine powder, and then use it as occasion shall require; this will dry, heal and skin any sore whatsoever to admiration.

CCCXXX. *For a Horse that is gored with a Stake or such like.*

THROW your horse on a dunghill, or some soft place, and then pour into the wound molten butter scalding hot, and let him lie till the butter is gone quite to the bottom of the wound; do this once a day till he be whole. If you desire to keep the wound open, then tent it with a piece of candle, and that will both draw and heal: The powder of green copperas, put into any wound, will keep it open; or if any proud flesh grow in any wound, scalded butter and salt, will assuredly eat it away; so will verdegrease or burnt allum: Honey and wheat flower, beaten well together to a salve, will heal a wound very speedily.

CCCXXXI. *To cure a wound made with Shot, Gunpowder, Lime, or any Fire.*

TAKE warm urine, or oil olive, and bathe and wash the fore; then, to kill the fire, take cream and oil beaten together, and anoint the fore, and when you see it raw then spread upon the wound cream and foot, mixt together, and strew upon that some of the powder of honey and lime; do thus until the horse is perfectly sound, which will be soon.---Turpentine, eggs and saffron, beaten together, will make a fine salve. Shoemaker's wax, yolks of eggs, wheat-flower and honey, mixt together, will make a fine plaister for a wound.

CCCXXXII. *For the Bite of a mad Dog.*

FIRST give him two or three spoonfuls of diapente in ale, wine, or cyder; then take a live pidgeon, open it, and lay it hot to the wound, and the pidgeon will draw out the venom; then heal
the

the fore with turpentine and hog's grease molten together. The leaves of aristolochia, bruised, will take away any poison; or scrape the wound and put garlick and salt to it, and it will draw out the venom. You may bleed in the neck if occasion require.

CCCXXXIII. *For a Canker.*

RUB the canker as you are shew'd in this book, and then anoint with vinegar, ginger and allum, made into a salve, and it will cure it soon.

CCCXXXIV. *To dissolve humours.*

A POUND of figs, well stamped with salt till they come to a perfect salve, dissolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores and giving large passages.

CCCXXXV. *For a Fistula.*

TO sink, first sear the fistula with a hot Iron until the skin look yellow; then make a plaister of rosin, sheep's suet, and brimstone, melted together, and lay it on hot, but not to scald; if it is broke or is likely to break, then first lay on a plaister of shoemaker's wax, spread upon allum'd leather, on purpose to break it; and when broke, take verdegrease, butter and salt, well mixt and melted together, and pour it scalding hot into the sore, and use this till the flesh look red, and then tent with verdegrease, burnt allum, wheat flower and the yolks of eggs, well beaten and mingled together, till it is healed; and to skin it, take barm and foot mixt together, and spread it on the sore, and it is a perfect cure: The searing, and plaister of rosin, foot and brimstone, is very good for windgalls.

CCCXXXVI.

CCCXXXVI. *The String-bait.*

IT is an imperfection some horses bring into the world with them, and others gets it by hard travel, and being over strain'd ; it being so obvious needs no description. The cure ; first take up the middle vein above the thigh, and under the vein you will see a string ; which string you must cut away, and then anoint the wound with melted butter and salt, and the horse will do well.

CCCXXXVII. *To heal the Biting or Stinging of Serpents, or any venomous Beast whatsoever.*

FIRST bleed in the mouth ; then make a plaister of honey, onions and salt, pounded and mixed together, and lay it to the wound ; then give the horse honey and treacle, in wine, to drink, or else white pepper, rue and thyme, mixt with wine ; or take aphodillus, hastus regia, and steep them with old wine, and lay it to the fore ; or take good quantity of the herb called fanicula, pound it and temper it together with the milk of a cow until it be all of one colour, and give it the horse to drink and it will heal him.

CCCXXXVIII. *For Brittle Hoofs.*

TAKE hog's greafe, dog's greafe and turpentine, mix them together, and anoint the hoofs therewith. Dog's greafe is an exceeding good thing for a brittle hoof.

CCCXXXIX. *For the Vives.*

FIRST shave off the hair, then take shoemaker's wax and spread it on a piece of allum leather, and put this plaister on the fore ; do not remove it until

til it break it, and then renew it, and it will both heal and dry it. It is an exceeding thing for a pole-evil before it breaks. *Proved.*

CCCXL. *To harden any softness.*

TAKE the powder of honey and lime, or the powder of oyster-shells, or the powder of a burnt sheep-skin, or thick cream and foot, mixed together, will harden any fore whatsoever

CCCXLI. *For bones out of joint.*

FIRST swim your horse in some pond, creek or river; and if that does not bring the joint into its place, then cast your horse on his back, and put four strong pasterns on him below his fetlocks; then draw him up by his legs so as his back may no more than just touch the ground; then draw the grieved leg higher than the rest till the poise and weight of his body has made the joint shoot into its right place again, which you shall know by the sudden and great crack it will make when the joint falleth into its true place: Then gently loose him and let the horse rise, and let him blood in the plate vein, or in the master vein, which is the big vein that is in the inside of the thigh, and then anoint the grieved place with the ointment for broken bones, or else with the oil of mandrakes, or the oil of swallows, both which are of sovereign virtue.

CCCXLII. *Of the rage of love in mares.*

IT is reported by some of our English farriers, that mares, being proud by high keeping, in the spring of the year, when their blood begins to wax warm, when they go to the water, will, on seeing their own shadows therein, presently fall in love therewith,

T

and

and from that love get into such a hot rage, that they will forget to eat or to drink, and never ceases running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking about and behind them : The cure of this folly is ; presently to lead the mare to the water, there let her see herself as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her folly.

CCCXLIII. For a Mare that has cast her Foal.

TAKE two spoonfuls of diapente and brew it well in wine, or strong beer, or else a cordial of honey, wine and anniseeds, well brewed together, and let her food be sweet mashes and comfortable drinks ; what hay she eats, see that it be clean and sweet.

CCCXLIV. Of gelding of Colts or old Horses.

GELDING is so common a practice, that there is no great occasion of enlarging much thereon. I would advise no unskillful hand to undertake any thing of the kind, lest he add disgrace to himself and kill the horse ; those that are practitioners and skilful, I would much recommend to them the use of the true and genuine british oil, poured into the holes as soon as the stones are out, and more especially for aged horses ; and the general use of Train oil for suppling the cods ; and by thus using you may cut at any age without danger. The dregs of the train oil is the best.

Proved.

CCCXLV. To get Horse Colts.

TAKE your mare to the horse before the full of the Moon, and when the sign is a female. To get mare colts, cover after the full, and in the male signs. N. B. There be twelve signs, six male, and six female.

CCCXLVI.

CCCXLVI. *The shape of the perfect Horse.*

HEAD and legs like a stag; the ears and tail of a fox; the eyes of a vulture; the neck of a swan; shoulders like the blade of a knife; the back and breast of a lion; the buttocks of a woman, and the feet of an ass.

CCCXLVII. *To make Hair smooth, sleek and soft.*

IF you will make your horse's coat to be smooth sleek and soft, and shining, keep him warm at the heart, for the least inward cold will make the hair stare; make him sweat oft, for that will raise up the dust and filth which makes his coat foul and hard; then, when the horse is in the greatest sweat, with an old sword blade, turning the edge towards the hair, scrape away all the white foam, sweat and filth which shall be raised up, and that will lay his coat even, and make it smooth; and when you let him blood, rub him all over with some of it, and let it remain two or three days; then curry and dress him well, and this will make his coat shine like glass.

CCCXLVIII. *For costiveness in the body.*

TAKE rye straw, cut it fine; then scald some water and wet it well therewith; then mix rye meal or bran with it, and let the horse eat it as hot as he can, and it will quickly loosen him. *Proved.*

CCCXLIX. *For the bite of a mad dog, or bite or sting of serpents.*

TAKE raw onions, with green Rue, a little salt, and some of the powder of the root of elecampane, beat them together in a mortar, and mix it well; apply it to the wound plaisterwise, and renew it as occasion require.

CCCL. *For the founder in the body:*

FIRST, If you find him lame, bleed in all four of his feet and give this drench: Take of aloes one ounce, boyl it in three pints of running or spring water until it comes to a quart; then add one gill of Melasses, soft soap as much, of yeast half a gill, stir them well together, and give it the Horse luke-warm; ride him a mile afterwards, or drive him, when it has done working; then give him the powder of Elecampane two ounces, flower of Brimstone half an ounce, roll'd up in butter and a little honey, made into balls, washing them down with good beer, ale or wine, or old strong cyder, until he be fully recovered. Let his food be clean and comfortable, give him cordials made of white wine and honey, and he will soon recover.

CCCLI. *For all feavers in general.*

IF you find your horse has a fever, first let him bleed in the neck vein; then give him three mornings fasting one ounce of diapente in beer, wine or cyder; rub his limbs well twice or thrice a day, and let his diet be cooling, but no cold water.

CCCLII. *Against poison or venom.*

TAKE a good handful of rue, boyl it in three pints of new milk; then add one gill of fallad oil; give it the horse luke-warm with a horn, and it is Excellent against poison. *Proved.*

CCCLIII. *For a lax or much scowring.*

TAKE of allum and bolearmoniack, finely powder'd, one penny-worth, put it into a quart of new milk, stir it till it come to a curd; then give it to the horse with a horn. A pint of verjuice is an Exceeding thing for a sucking foal. CCCLIV.

CCCLIV. *For the botch in the groin, or imposthumes.*

TAKE of snapweed or jumpingweed, clowns-wort and elder tops, of each a like quantity, and boyl them well ; then strain them, and to the liquor add one pound of hog's Lard, and let it boyl to the consistency of a salve ; anoint the sore therewith until it be ripe, then lance it and wash the wound with soap suds, or water and salt, and heal the wound with ointment made of the aforesaid herbs, and it will cure it quickly.

CCCLV. *To keep a Horse that he shall not Neigh.*

TAKE and tie a wollen list about his tongue, and he cannot make any noise while that remaineth.

CCCLVI. *How to make Unguentum Basilicon.*

TAKE of honey, storex, galbanum, bdellium, black pepper, the marrow of a stag, of each a like quantity, twice as much armoniack, and of the powder of frankincence as much as any of the others ; incorporate them with sheep. suet, and apply it to the greif, and it will help it.

CCCLVII. *How to make the oil of red Cedar.*

GET the heart of red Cedar, and split it into very small splints, and put them into a pot as full as it can be stew'd ; then take a board and bore it full of holes, and put it over the pot ; then get a vessel, and put it into the ground, as large as the mouth of the pot, and turn the pot, with the board as a cover, upside down right on the vessel set in the earth ; then bank it well all round, and make a fire on the bottom of the pot and continue it until the cedar be burnt to a cinder. The oil will drop through the board that is full of holes into the vessel set in the

Barth. This oil being heated well in with a hot bar of iron, drives back imposthumes; is good for strains, being mixt with other molifying oils, heated in as aforesaid.

CCCLVIII. *An exceeding drench for colics and worms, or a foul stomach.*

TAKE an earthen pot, make a hole in the bottom and stop it with a spile; put in a little straw, and take about four or five lumps of white dung of a hen, and three pints of good ashes, as much chimney soot, and put all these into the pot; then put to it two quarts of hot water, cover the pot and let it stand one hour; take out the spile and draw off the Liquor; then take a pint thereof and add to it one gill of hog's lard, give it to the horse luke-warm, and this drink will perfectly cleanse his stomach, kill the worms, and cause him to rope at the mouth abundantly. I would not advise it for a general drench, but in extrem cases, *Proved.*

CCCLIX. *How to make black-ash lie for the curing of ulcers, pole-evils; fistulas, and the like.*

TAKE of the tops and bark of black ash and burn it in some clean place to ashes; then put these ashes into a vessel that has a hole and a spile in it; then put a little straw in the vessel, and the ashes on the straw; then pour on hot boiling water, and cover it up; let it stand three or four hours, then draw it off, and if it be not strong enough, which you shall know by its slipperiness, put it on the ashes again; you may either boyl it or let it stand some time, but it will be the stronger for boiling; then draw it off, and put it in a bottle for use. This lie, made warm, and put into any ulcer or fistula, will of itself search, cleanse and heal it to admiration soon. **CCCLX.**

CCCLX. *Of the Diseases incident to Mares, and of the Barrenness of the Womb.*

THE only disease incident to the womb of a mare (as far as our farriers are experienced) is barrenness, which may proceed from divers causes, as through the intemperence of the matrix being either too hot and dry; or too cool and moist; or too dry, or else too short or too narrow; or having the neck thereof turned awry; or by means of some obstruction or stopping in the matrix; or that the mare is too fat, or too lean, and divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old farriers, is to take a good handful of leeks, and stamp them in a mortar with four or five spoonfuls of wine; then put thereunto twelve flies called cantharides; then strain them all together, with a sufficient quantity of water, and serve the mare therewith two days together by pouring the same into her nature with a glister-pipe, made for that purpose, and at the end of three days next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her; and after she is covered with her nature twice with cold water. *Proved.*

CCCLXI. *For Broken Bones.*

FIRST sling your horse, so that he may hang and scarcely bear any weight upon his feet; if it be a fore leg that is broken, then raise him a little high-est forward; but if an hind leg, then a little behind, so that the horse may most rest upon the sound members: When your horse is thus slung, set the bone in its right place: When done, bathe it well with warm vinegar or with spirits of wine, and wrap it close about with unwasht wool, pulled directly from the sheep's back, binding it fast with a good linnen

roller, first soak'd in oil and vinegar. See that your roller is smooth and plain; and upon that lay more wool, dipt in oil and vinegar; then splint with three broad splints bound at both ends with strong twine, and in that case keep the horse forty days, and don't move it above three times in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so want to be fresh drest; always keeping his leg as straight as possible. Don't fail of pouring oil and vinegar, once every day through the splints. At the end of forty days, if you find the Bones are knit, loose him that the horse may stand a little on the fore leg. If he tread firm, let him quite loose, and then anoint the fore place with soft grease, or with one of the following plaisters or ointments; take spuma argenti, and vinegar, of each one pound, of fallad oil half a pound, of armoniack and turpentine, three ounces, of wax and rosin two ounces, of bitumen, pitch and verdegrease, of each half a pound; boyl the vinegar, oil and spuma argenti until it get thick, then put in the pitch; that being melted take the pot from the fire, and put in the bitumen; that also being melted, put in all the rest, and set the pot to the fire again, and let it incorporate well: Then strain it for use. Before you lay on this plaister, use this ointment; take of fallad oil one quart, of hog's grease and spuma nitre, each one pound, and let them boyl together until they come to bleb above; then take it off the fire. When you use this ointment, let it be very hot, and rub and chafe it well in; then put on one of the plaisters, and it is most sovereign for any broken bones.

CCCLXII. *An approved cure for a fistula.*

TAKE two large handfuls of the right arsesmart, pound it, steep it in water all night, and lay it on the
fistula

fistula or' pole-evil, then clap your hand on it and keep it there till you find the warmth come to your hand; then take the arsesmart and bury it, and throw the water you steep'd it in on the place you bury it; and as the arsesmart rots the malady will sink; it is a cure which has been often proved. Once may do, but you may do it four or five times.

N. B. The right arsesmart has a red stalk, bears a white flower, and by tasting, it will be very hot on the tongue.

CCCLXIII. *An approved cure for the mourning of the Chine.*

THE signs; the horse will run thick matter at the nostrils, which will be full of little red streaks. Take a great quantity of the middle green bark of elder and put it into a middling pot; then fill up the pot with running or spring water, put it on the fire and boyl it half away; then fill it up again, do so three several times; and at the last, when one half is boyl'd away, take it from the fire and strain it through a linnen cloth; to that decoction add a third part as much of the oil of oats; for want of that olive oil, or hog's grease, or sweet butter, and being warm'd again, take a quart thereof and give the horse to drink, one hornful at his mouth and another at his nostrils, especially at that which runneth most. Give it him fasting, for it not only cureth this disorder, but any sickness proceeding from any cold; it would be good to use to his body some wholesome friction, and to his head some wholesome bath. If it be in the summer, let him run abroad; If in the winter, stable him, and let his diet be sweet hay, warm water and mashes.

CCCLXIV. *A certain Cure, for a Horse that is Hide-bound.*

FIRST let him bleed in the neck vein, then give him this drink ; take of Celandine two handfuls ; if it be in the summer, the leaves and stalks will serve, but in the winter use the roots and all ; chop them very small, and take one handful of wormwood, and rue as much, chop them likewise ; put all these into three quarts of strong beer, and boil them till it come to a quart ; then take it off and strain all the moisture from the herbs ; dissolve in the liquor three ounces of melasses, and give it the horse fasting luke-warm ; then for a week together rub all the horse's body over with oil and beer, or butter and beer, against the hair. Let his diet be warm mashes of malt, or bursten oats, rye or barley, and he will soon recover.

CCCLXV. *General drenches and medicines for all inward diseases or surfeits in Horses.*

THERE is no medicine more sovereign for all Diseases which breed in horses bodies than to take half an ounce of the powder diapente brew'd either with wine, sack, muscadine, or clear beer, or strong clear cyder. If it be for heart sickness, give it the horse to drink in the morning fasting, at least three mornings together, especially when the horse begins first to droop : The next is, *viz.* Take of celandine two handfuls, both roots and leaves, chop and bruise them, take of rue as much, red sage and mint as much, and of aloes half an ounce ; boil these in a pottle of strong beer or ale till one half be consumed ; then give the horse to drink luke-warm fasting. Another ; Take four ounces of Diepente, and mix it

it with four ounces of clarified honey, and keep it in a close glass; give half an ounce thereof, with one pint of sweet wine, to drink, and it is an excellent drench; Another; Take of liquorish one ounce, of anniseeds, cumminseeds and elecampane roots, of each half an ounce, of turmerick and bays, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long pepper and fennugreek, of each two drams, pound these small, and searse them; then put five spoonfulls into a quart of warm ale, with a little butter or oil, and it is very sovereign for any disease coming from old causes: Another; Take a quart of good ale or wine, and a raw egg beaten and mingled with twelve scruples of quick sulphur, and four scruples of myrrh made into powder, and give it the horse, and it is a good drench. The root of sea onion, the root of poplar, mingled with common salt, given in water, keepeth the horse long in health. The powder of brimstone, with sweet wine, is a good drench. Take fine powder of fenugreek, and seeth it in water until it wax thick, then add to it one pound of sweet butter, one ounce of linseed oil, and as much of the oil of nuts; mingle them well together and give it the horse in three or four days drinks, a pretty quantity at a time. Celandine boil'd in beer or ale, from a pottle to a quart, with the bigness of a walnut of brimstone added to it, is an excellent drench. Garlick and housleek, beaten together, boil'd in beer or ale, from a pottle to a quart, mixt with anniseeds and sugarcandy, and a pretty quantity of sallad oil, is a choice drench for any sickness which doth proceed from hot causes, such as the frensy, anticow, and such like. Thus much of general drenches, and their uses.

CCCLXVI. *Three excellent and well approved medicines for any cold, dry cough, shortness of breath, purfiness or broken wind.*

First : TAKE three spoonfuls of tar, sweet butter as much, beat and work them well together ; add fine powder of liquorish, anniseeds and sugar candy, till it be brought to a hard past, then make it in three round balls, and put into each ball four or five cloves of garlick ; give them to the horse, and warm him with riding both before and after his receiving the pills. He must fast full two hours both before and after.

Second : TAKE a piece of fat bacon, four fingers long, and almost two fingers square, then with your knife make several holes in it, and stop in them as many cloves of garlick as you can ; then roll it in the powder of liquorish, anniseeds, sugarcandy and flower of brimstone, all equally mixt together. Give it your horse fasting in the morning, at least twice a week, and ride him after it, and be sure you sprinkle all the hay he eats with water, and it will soon perfect the cure.

Third : TAKE of the syrup of coltsfoot, two ounces of elecampane, anniseeds and liquorish root, half as much of each, pounded into a fine powder, sugarcandy two ounces, divided into two equal parts ; then with sweet butter work the syrup and powders with one part of the sugarcandy into a stiff paste ; then make balls or pills thereof, and roll them in the other part of the sugarcandy ; then give the horse one ball or two every morning fasting, exercising him gently an hour after. Thus do for divers mornings till you find him mend, which he will do in a short time.

CCCLXVII.

CCCLXVII. *Of rowelling.*

THE use of rowels in some cases may be good, but may not be idolized where a horse is full of running humours, that he swell under the belly, or on his legs or heels; you then may put one under the belly, but to give your horse one or two drying drinks, to work by urine, is far better; because that dries up the very root of the cause, and a rowel does no more than draw the filthy matter off, and leave the root behind. If your horse has slipt either his shoulder or hip, and after you have swam him and bleed in the plate vein, in the chest, or master vein, in the inside of the thigh, which you should do immediately as he comes out of the water; I say, if you find his lameness mend, then you may rowel between the spade-bone and the shoulder, or the inside of the thigh. As you are before directed how to make a rowel, and how to put it into further use, shall leave it to the discretion of any skillful person.

N. B. I have heard say, a piece of poke root, applied in manner of a rowel, betwixt the neck and the shoulder, will sink any fistula at first coming; it has been proved in Marlborough, Chester county.

All rowels should be turn'd every day, or otherways they are of no effect. A common English rowel is made with an old piece of the upper-leather of a shoe after this manner; cut the leather round, scarcely two inches diameter; then cut a hole in the middle of the leather a full inch diameter; then take of tow and wind round the leather quite smooth and tight, leaving a hole in the middle. When you use it, let the part be where it may, you must take up the skin with a pair of nippers or smith's pincers, and with a sharp penknife make a slit right
in

in the skin within the pincers, but no larger than you can get the rowel in with difficulty ; then part the skin from the flesh, large enough to receive your rowel ; then grease your rowel with hog's fat and put it in ; then have ready rosin and tallow, or turpentine and tar, molten, and take tow and dip in it and put it in the hole after the rowel, and some dry tow after that until the place be nearly full, and that will bring the rowel to digest in twenty-four hours or sooner ; when you see it begin to work, draw forth the tow, and be sure you turn it with your finger every day, for fourteen or fifteen days, or longer if required. And when you leave off turning it, the rowel will work out, and heal of itself, leaving no eye-sore. I look upon this rowel as the easiest to be applied, and to answer the end and design the best ; with proper care it will work far the strongest. *Proved.*

CCCLXVIII. *For Botts or Worms.*

TAKE one gill of rum, and add thereto two ounces of pilgrim's salve, shake it well together and give it to your horse ; its said it is a present cure.

CCCLXIX. *Another.*

TAKE of red precipitate, as much as will lay on a half quarter dollar, and work it up into pills with sweet butter, and give it the horse, and ride him after, and it will kill all the worms and botts. *P.*

CCCLXX. *For a Farcy.*

TAKE three quarts of strong beer, and dissolve in it six ounces of stone lime, give it the horse in two drinks, one half thereof at a time, at two days distance, and it is a Cure. *Proved, J. F.*

CCCLXXI.

CCCLXXI. *For a Ring-bone.*

THE description thereof is in this book before shewn ; also remedies laid down for the cure, altho^o some people grossly err by saying there is no cure for them. If the callosity of a ring-bone does not spread itself below the coronet of the hoof, and is hard and bony, you may then take it out by applying a caustic thus : Shave off the hair close, and apply the caustic, made of stone-lime and soft soap, and let it lie on not more than twenty-four hours ; in that time or less, if your caustic be good, it will penetrate to the very root of the ring-bone, and it will come clean out in fourteen or fifteen days. In the mean while keep some of your suppling and drawing salves to it, also keep it clean from filth and dirt ; and when the ring-bone is out, apply your healing salves, and wash the wound with soap suds or lime water, or allum water, or whey, dressing once in twenty-four hours ; when you see proud flesh arise, as it will, then scald it off with butter and salt, or burnt allum, or any of your eating powders. Thus do with care, and there will be no doubt of a cure. A ring-bone at first coming is easily cured, sometimes by a mild blister only ; if it should be obstinate and will grow, then first fire gently, and apply a blister plaister or two, and when they are dry, make a poultice of oat-meal, oil and vinegar, and bind it on, and turn the horse to pasture, and it is a cure without much eye-sore.

CCCLXXII. *For a horse when he is badly surfeited.*

TAKE four ounces of the inner bark of the white shaking asp-tree, and put it into three quarts of running water, boil it away to half a gallon ;
then

then take out the bark and dissolve one ounce of aloes in the liquor, and add thereto one gill of rum, one gill of melasses, and give it the horse luke-warm as a drench. *Proved.*

N. B. I have been credibly inform'd, that this bark, of the white asp, is a remedy in all fevers.

CCCLXXIII. *For Foundering of the Body.*

THIS disease often proves of very bad consequence, and is chiefly brought upon the horse by means of unskilful, careless, immoderate keepers and riders ; the cure is, to bleed all his feet with a fleam on the top of the hoof, and then give him this drink ; take nine or ten cloves of Garlick, of pepper, ginger and grains of paradise, two penny worth of each ; bruise them well together, and put it into half a gallon of strong beer, and give it at two drinks, a quart at a time ; and afterwards give him nourishing food and comfortable cordials, of which you have store in this book. *Proved.*

CCCLXXIV. *A most certain and approved Cure for any Hurt upon the Cronet.*

TAKE soap and salt, of each alike quantity, mix them together like paste ; then cut out the overreach or hurt and lay it open and plain ; then wash the wound with old urine and salt, or with beer and salt, and take a cloth and dry the wound, and bind on the soap and salt, and let it continue on twenty-four hours. If the wound be great, do thus for three or four days together till you see the venom is drawn out of the wound ; then take of train oil two spoonfuls, and as much white lead, mix them to the thickness of a salve ; and lay it to the wound morning and evening until it be well, which will be soon.

CCCLXXV.

CCCLXXV. *For a Pole-evil.*

THE decoction or oil of snapweed, two ounces, the oil of turpentine one ounce, mixt together, is an excellent thing for any fistula or pole-evil, either to heal it when broke, or to backen it, if near ripe to break it; but to backen, there should be an equal quantity of both. *Proved.*

CCCLXXVI. *For foot Foundering either old or new.*

FIRST you shall, with a very sharp drawing-knife, draw every part of the soles of the horse's feet as thin as possible, even till you see the water and blood issuing forth; and be sure to draw every part a like, which can hardly be done without a butteris, and at the very sharp end of the trush of the horse's foot you'll see the vein lie; then with your knife's end lift up the hoof and let the vein bleed, which, as long as you hold open the hoof, will spin a great way forth; when it bleeds better than a pint close the hoof, and so stop the vein, and tack on his foot a hollow shoe, made for that purpose; that done, clap a little tow, dipt in hog's grease and turpentine, upon the vein very hard; then take two or three hard roasted eggs, hot out of the fire, burst them in the soal of the horse's foot; then pour upon them hog's grease, turpentine and tar, boiling hot, and as much flax, dipt therein, as will fill up the hollow shoe; then lay on a piece of leather to keep all in, and splint it sure; in this manner dress all his four feet if all be foundered, otherwise no more than are; thus dress the horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble you shall be sure to have the horse as sound as ever he was. *Proved, G. J.*

CCCLXXVII. *For a Cough.*

I HAVE been inform'd that an Indian turnip, dry'd, and finely powder'd and mixt with bran, is a certain cure for a cough.

CCCLXXVIII. *An excellent scowring for a running horse, where molten grease must be taken away.*

TAKE twenty raisins of the sun, pick out the stones, and ten figs slit; boyl them till they be thick; then take of the powder of liquorish, of anniseeds and sugarcandy, made fine; then mix them, with the raisins and figs, all together to a stiff paste, and make balls of it; then roll the balls in sweet oil or butter, and give them the horse as you see cause. Give him strong exercise both before and after you give him these balls. See scowrings for the running horse.

Proved.

CCCLXXIX. *To make hair grow quick.*

TAKE green walnuts and burn them to a powder; then mix the powder with honey, olive oyl and wine, then anoint the place therewith, and it wonderfully increaseth hair very soon; or take southernwood and rusty bacon, and make it into a salve, and it will bring hair quickly. Ashes of dead bees, mixt with any sort of oyl, will do the like.

CCCLXXX. *For wens in any part of the Body.*

FIRST sear them with a hot iron; then heal them with the powder of honey and lime, and it is a present cure.

Proved.

CCCLXXXI.

CCCLXXXI. *Relief for a tired horse.*

TAKE a quart of strong beer, cyder or wine, and put in it half an ounce of Elecampane; brew it well together and give it the horse with a horn, and it will make him exceeding chearful: also tie a bunch of pennyroyal to your bitt, and it will prevent your horse from tiring. Or thus, take off your saddle and rub his back with the herb arlesmart, and lay some under the saddle, and ride him, and with good feeding, and moderate usage, will prevent your horse from tiring. Take some rue and rub your horse therewith all over, and no flies will touch nor come near him. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXII. *To stop bleeding at the nose.*

TAKE two small whip cords, and tie them very hard just beneath the elbows of his fore legs; then get wet cloths or hay and lay it on the nape of his neck, and it will stop presently; the hay or cloths must be kept wet. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXIII. *For the botch in the groin, or any imposthume.*

TAKE a piece of allum'd leather the bigness of the fore, and spread on it some shoemaker's wax; lay it on the fore, and that will ripen it. When ripe lance it to let out the filth, and wash the wound with allum water, and anoint it with the ointment called egyptiacum, which will cure it and heal it soon. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXIV. *How to make a black star.*

TAKE the rust of iron, galls and vitriol, and pound them with oil, anoint the place where you would have the star, and the hair will turn black. P.

CCCLXXXV. *For the dropſy, or evil habit of the Body.*

TAKE one gallon of beer, and put into it a good quantity of wormwood ſeed, leaves and ſtalks, and boil it to a quart; ſkim it and ſtrain it; then put into it three ounces of treacle, of long pepper and grains beaten to powder one ounce and half, bleed in the neck vein after he has ſtood a while; give him the drench, and rub his fore legs well with train oil, and turn him to paſture. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXVI. *For the dropſy in man or beaſt.*

TAKE broom, and make diet-drink thereof, and uſe it as you ſee cauſe. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXVII. *For a Canker, or ſore in any part of the body.*

TAKE a quantity of poke roots, and boil them in a quart of water until it comes to half a pint; then take ſix ounces of hog's fat, one gill of tar, and one ounce of the flower of brimſtone, boil all together till the water is boil'd quite away; then uſe it for a common ſalve for any violent canker or ſore. *Proved.*

CCCLXXXVIII. *For the ſtrangles.*

BLEED under the tongue, and fume with the decoction of Camomile, and poultice with bran, vinegar, ſalt and hog's lard, and it will ſoon cure. *P.*

CCCLXXXIX. *For the ſtone, an excellent receipt.*

TAKE of nitre half an ounce, of horſe-radish a good root, ſcrape the root fine, then infuſe it in a quart of wine or old clear cyder, to which you may add five or ſix egg-ſhells finely powdered; let it infuſe

use twenty-four hours, and give it your horse, but you may give it him sooner if the case require. *P.*

CCCXC. For the Botts.

TAKE of urine half a pint, of rum one gill, pepper and gunpowder, each a large spoonful, shake all well together and teem it in your horse. I have heard say it is an absolute cure.

CCCXCI. An ointment for blisters.

NERVE, marshmallow ointment, each two ounces, quicksilver one ounce, venice turpentine one ounce, spanish flies, powder'd, a dram and a half, sublimate, one dram, oil of origanum, two drams.

Proved.

CCCXCII. A general and certain cure for any strain in the shoulder, or any hidden part.

TAKE a large earthen vessel, and fill it with the herbarfesmart, and brooklime, bruis'd and mix'd together; get of the oldest urine, and put into the vessel as much as will cover the herbs all over; then cover close, and set it in some safe cool place; when you have occasion to use it, take an earthen pipkin, and put into it as much of the urine and herbs as you think you shall want, and set it on the fire and let it boil well; then if the strain be in the shoulder, take an old boot and cut off the foot, so that you may draw it over the horse's foot up his leg quite to his elbow, keeping the lower part of the boot close to his leg as possible, but let the upper part of the boot be open'd wide, into which thrust all your mixture as hot as the horse can bare it, and lay it fast and close about his shoulder, especially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boot,

U 3

fasten

fasten it to the horse's mane, that it may not slip down; and thus do once a day till he is cured: This medicine is so violent, that if there be any foul matter, it must come forth; it will bring it to an head and ripen, break and heal it. *Proved.*

CCCXCIII. *An Indian cure for old ulcerous sore legs in men.*

TAKE of sassafras leaves, either dry or green, in winter or summer, and lay them on the sores; also make a poultice thereof with milk and hog's lard, and apply that, renewing it as occasion require, remembering when the poultice is off to apply the leaves, which will cure mighty easy to the patient. I have been very credibly inform'd, that the Indian has cured white people by this when the surgeons have said their legs must be cut off.

CCCXCIV. *For a fistula or pole-evil.*

THE root of black ellebore is a certain remedy, but dangerous if used by an unskillful hand; in case the ulcers are extream bad, you may put a piece of the root into it, and it will foment and cleanse it, and cause it to run as long as there is any filthy matter to come forth; but be sure you let it go no further, for it will draw the horse all up in a heap if it does, and it may be he will never more be well: If it be used in the manner of a rowel in any part of the horse's body, it will draw all humours to that place; it is so dangerous, I would not recommend the use of it to any unskillful hand; some of the roots, stuck into an apple, and given a horse in manner of a ball, is a very good purge in extream cases. *Proved, G. J.*
CCCXCV.

CCCXCV. *For the mad itch.*

FIRST you should give a drying drink or two, made of forge water, crocus martis, venice turpentine and flower of brimstone, or the drink for the pocky farcion, or the guiacum chips and forge water, or any others of the drying drinks; then take foot, lime and soft soap, and train oil, and work them into a salve, and anoint the horse therewith. *Proved.*

CCCXCVI. *To ripen imposthumes.*

TAKE of mallow roots, common or marsh, and white lilly roots, bruise them and boil them in milk, and thicken it with linseed meal, and apply it as a poultis, and it will ripen any imposthume whatsoever. *Proved.*

CCCXCVII. *For cankerous tumours in the feet.*

TAKE cow dung, tar and hog's fat, and make a poultis thereof, and as hot as possible, (free from scalding) apply it round the hoof. *Proved.*

CCCXCVIII. *For galled shoulders.*

TAKE half a pint of rum and a piece of hard soap, make a lather and wash the shoulders therewith, and it both hardens and heals them. *Proved.*

N. B. Rattlesnakes grease will do the like.

CCCXCIX. *For a fistula or pole-evil at first coming.*

TAKE of tansey, wormwood and arsesmart, bruise them and put some cold water on them; then put all in a bag and lay it on the tumour, and there let all abide three hours; then take it off and bury it under one of the roots of those herbs, and as that rots the disorder sinks and removes. I have been credi-

bly inform'd, that this will relieve these disorders. The oil of amber well rub'd in is said to do the like: Or the spirit of turpentine well heated in with a bar of iron: Where those disorders are hard, guiacum oil, or palm oil, are exceeding good to assuage and sink hard swellings and tumours. *Proved.*

N. B. Rue boild in milk, and sallad oil added to it, and given in manner of a drench, is an exceeding antidote against poyson.

CCCC. For the Haw, commonly called the Hoakes.

THE haw is a gristle growing betwixt the nether eye-lid and the eye, and it covereth sometimes more than one half of the eye; from phlegmy humours which descend down from the head, and knitting together in the end grows to a horn or hard gristle: The signs thereof are a watering of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, besides an apparent shew of the haw itself; the cure is, take a needle and a double thread, put it through the tip of the horse's ear, and put the needle likewise through the upper eye-lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye-lid, and fasten it to his ear; then with your thumb put down the nether lid and you shall plainly see the Haw; then put your needle through the edge of the haw, and with the thread draw it out so as you may lap it about your finger, then fasten the thread about your little finger to hold it, and with a very sharp knife cut a cross the gristle of the inside next the horse's eye, and so seperating the skin and the fat from the gristle, cut the gristle quite out; then, cutting your threads, draw them clean out of the eye-lids and out of the haw; fill the eye with fine salt, leave no blood in the eye, and take good care that by no means you cut away too much of the wash
or

or fat by the haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the haw, for that will make your horse bleer-eyed. *Proved, G. J.*

CCCCI. For a swelling after blood letting.

IN this case, if it be in the neck, which is the most likely, you should by no means let your horse run at pasture until he be thoroughly cured; when you perceive your horse begin to swell, wash it well with water and salt, or urine and salt, squeeze it often with your finger and thumb, but if you find it will swell, then take of the weed call'd snap or jumpingweed, or diweed, and pound it, put it into a pot with a gallon of spring or running water, boil it till it comes to a pint; then take it off, strain and squeeze the weed well; then set the liquor over a gentle fire, put one pound of the purest hog's lard thereto, and gently boil it till it comes to a salve, stir all the while it is boiling; then take it off for use. With this salve rub and chafe the grieved place well therewith; which will draw the venom out exceedingly, and soon perfect the cure; it is one of the best things that ever I met with in such cases, or almost any wound.

N. B. If you was to make an ointment with the aforesaid weed, and the herb call'd crown-wounds-wort and May butter unwasht, or clarified hog's lard, I believe it would be one of the best could be got for any wounds for man or beast, for it will both draw, purge, cleanse and heal, and that in a short time.

If you find that the swelling, after blood letting, will be obstinate, so as not to be speedily reduced by the salve ; then in that case you may then take of the snap-weed a good quantity, and put it in a frying pan with good store of hog's lard, and fry it, do not fry it until it be crisp, then apply it as a poultice to the whole swelling ; this poultice and ointment will assuredly draw out the venom, and cure any thing of the like nature. *Proved.*

CCCCII. *For any wound that is made with a stake, or goared with a cow, or rent with a chain or such like, be it in any part of the horse's body.*

IF you wash it well with the juice of the poke, or a decoction made of the root of the poke, and use nothing more than the aforesaid ointment, always washing with the poke first, it will speedily perfect a cure to admiration, and suffer the wound not to wrinkle, fester, nor no proud flesh to grow : *N. B.* There is a tree call'd the fringe-tree, it bears something like white silk fringe, it grows by the sides of running streams, the Indians say, that the bark of the root will heal a man that is shot through, or cement any flesh together, by steeping the bark in spring water, and applying it to the wound, and keeping of it moist while it remain on the wound with spring water. It has been experienced by a man who cut his thumb almost off, so that it is not unlikely but it may be good for horses that hath their sinews cut or broken, which happeneth sometimes.

CCCCIII. *For an apoplexy, falling evil, staggers, and Phrensy.*

I MET with some horses whose disorders were in effect a composition of the whole disorders as above ; on

a circumspect observation of their symptoms and signs, it did not appear that one particular of these was the cause, but that they all were united, and with sharp fits of an intermitting fever: They had been bad three days before I saw them, and had been bleed in the neck; I immediately bleed them in the mouth, and put some tar on their nostrils, and order'd them to be cloath'd and kept warm; I order'd a friction of goose grease, vinegar and honey, all melted together, and being hot rub'd their poles and napes of their neck therewith very painfully; then added to this friction a little spirit of turpentine, and rub'd it well across their loins against the hair; then order'd a man with a good wisp of straw to rub them well for near half an hour; this chear'd them a little, and began to set the blood and juices to work a little in their proper tone; then order'd some long dung to be got that would heat, and laid it on their loins, six or eight inches thick, and bound it close on; then I made a sovereign drink, of wild comfry roots, elecampane, fennel seeds, garlick a good quantity, of wormwood, ditany, spicewood, bark, ginger, household bread, butter, honey, rosin, melasses and clear cyder, prepared in the manner of the sovereign drink, for internal ailments, in this book recited, and gave it them: The same evening I used the aforesaid friction, rub'd them, chang'd their dung, litter'd them with straw to keep them warm, and left them till morning, when I saw that they would recover with proper care taken, and that in a few days, and the disorder in a great measure broke. I followed the same that day and the next, and the day after I bled them in the mouth again, still doing as heretofore; after three days I gave the drink but once in two days, but continued the rubbing and friction, and the dung,
renewing

renewing it twice aday, and they perfectly recovered in a little time, beyond the expectation of every person that saw them, for every one concluded that it was not possible to recover them: There were other horses taken with the same disorder, which I was not with, but most of them died. Those things seems to be nearly calculated for these disorders; bleeding in these cases once or twice, or three times, a little at a time, is of good effect; the friction is certainly good, as it clears the head and brain, opens the vessels, and causes perspiration in them parts; also strengthens the loins, and drives the disorder from the kidney; the dung is a great help to the friction, as it keeps the loins and kidneys warm for the friction to do its office, and in a manner to draw part of the disorder and fever outwardly, which you may see by the dew on the loins when you renew your dung in its proper season; the drink is a strong antidote against poysonous qualities, or nourisher of feeble stomachs, a strengthener of weak lungs, nerves and arteries; the rubbing with the straw gives great circulation to the blood and juices, so that it mightily strengthens the limbs, and frees them from stiffness; I am quite of opinion, that these remedies will work a cure in any of those disorders. *P. J. M.*

N. B. Those disorders are infectious, therefore seperate the sound from the sick, and rub tar on their nostrils and on their bridle bits, and let them drink with it; tar being often a preventer of infections; you may fume with a match of brimstone.

CCCCIV. For a Fistula or a Pole-evil.

THESE are both one disorder, altho' not both in one place; there are divers cures in this book laid down, and all experienced, and I make no doubt
but

but they will perfect it sooner or later ; but when you have those disorders before you, and your repeated trials to backen the tumour proves unsuccessful, then ripen it with the utmost expedition ; let it break of its own accord, and when broke squeeze out what filthy matter you can ; then take of the old poak root a good quantity, and bruise them well, and boil them in water, vinegar or chamberlie, and add thereto soft soap a pint, and wash therewith scalding hot ; then take tincture of myrrh and pour some in the wound in each hole after you have washt and dry'd the wounds with tow, and so do once in twenty-four hours ; your horse should be kept on low dry food, should not be suffer'd to run at pasture ; if you propose a speedy cure you should also give him those drying drinks, *viz.* The forge water and crocus martis, or the guaicum shavings, sarsaparilla and stone raisins ; you also should frequently, while he is under cure, wet his bran with a strong decoction of saffras root, which may answer the end of the former drinks ; if not to be had, you may once a week give three quarters of a pint of linseed oil, which will refine and sweeten the blood and juices, and by a steady application of this external wash and tincture, I am satisfied those disorders may be removed in twenty days or less ; there is scarcely any thing of precipitant kind that is so strong as this decoction for any ulcerated tumours, and the virtue of this tincture is so well known by surgeons and able farriers, that there is no occasion of scrupling its efficacy ; this decoction has great virtue in backing those tumours ; in that case you should give the drinks as above : If you have a horse before you whose fistula have been a running ulcer for some months, and the bone is affected thereby, you should

cut

cut all the horney callous flesh away, until you come to the bone, unless your decoction will take it speedier away, 'as it will as quick as any precipitant you can get; and when bare, scrape the bone, and apply tents, of equal parts, of tincture of myrrh and Euphorbium; then fill the hole up with molten snap-weed ointment, always using the decoction whilst any ulcer remains; but if the bone keeps putrified and crumbled, or any string sinew or membrane is ulcerated, putrified or affected, I say, in this desperate case, so long as it remains in that order, there will be no cure perfected; you must get an iron in the form of a glaizer's iron, the head thereof should be steel, finely filed, heated hot, and when the sparkling is off, then burn to the very bottom of the fistula; then for once or twice you may use the snap-weed ointment, or a salve made with the high snakeroot, which is not unlikely to draw out the fire and venom; then use the decoction of euphorbium which will bring to use the internals; I am apt to believe by a constant application, as is here laid down, a speedy cure will be soon perfected.

N. B. In many places in this book you are caution'd, in incision, to beware of sinews and arteries.

CCCCV. *For the Glanders.*

THE signs are laid down in this book; some young horses with a cold or a surfeit will run a bluish matter at the nostrils, but that is no glander; on the contrary, nature is relieving itself; when the matter from the nostrils is of a glewy cruddy nature, greenish, white or yellowish, or thick, the glands under the jaws fallen, kernels one larger than the other, and several small ones sticking close to the bone; those kernels in the mourning of the chine
are

are generally more spread under the whole chaps, and loose in the midst of the two bones, just under the wind-pipe or weland, the gleet at the nostrils is generally white and clotty; by these signs a glander may be known. The remedy, take goose grease, any quantity you like, and rub it on the pole and nape of the neck as often as occasion require; this is the whole remedy: I have in degree experienced its efficacy in some sort in this disorder, yet not in a case of desperacy, with success. I am quite of opinion, provided the spine is not too far vicerated, that this remedy, and fuming at the nostrils with any of the fumes in this book laid down, or assafitida and castro, and two or three drinks of the decoction of sassafras root, a quarter of an ounce of gum guaiacum dissolved in it, given luke-warm, will perfect a cure speedily. This remedy seems to be nearly calculated for the disorder in desperate cases: the goose grease thus used will cause any common running at the nostrils speedily to evacuate, disperse and dry up, which I have proved; but shall leave farther trial to the judicious. *P. by J. M.*

CCCCVI. *A plaister for a sore back.*

TAKE of wheat meal, what quantity you like, of sheep dung half as much, of rye meal half as much as sheep dung, mix them all together, and boil them in spring water until they come to a thick paste; then take a piece of allum'd leather or tow cloth, and spread it thereon, and so clap it on the sore; you must tie your horse a while, or otherways he will gnaw the plaister off. If possible, you must let the plaister stay on till it comes off of itself, and it will cure him: Also you may make a plaister of foot, rye meal, whites of eggs and honey; beat all together

together and apply it as above, and it will cure it ; but the other is the best. If there be any filthy matter in the sore, that must first be let out. For a new gall, when you take off your saddle, wash it with salt and water, or fair water, then strew some hickory ashes or wall mud thereon ; that will soon cure. If a horse's back be almost rotten, after you have washed the sore with fair water, or what you may, but I recommend the water made for running ulcers, before recited in this book ; I say, when you have washed, take of the root clonswort, or clonswoundwort, burn it to a coal, not ashes, and pound it very fine, and strew the powder on the sore ; this in a few days will cure any horse's back if it be nearly rotten ; the more you ride or work a horse that is galled the sooner he will be well, if you keep your saddle or collar from the wound. P.

CCCCVII. *For Botts and Worms.*

VARIOUS receipts are laid down for the cure, many of which are really very good, and I know not one in this book but what will free any horse from botts or worms, provided he is not too far spent. What botts or worms are, I need not describe, as I presume they are known to most that keep horses : The signs are, they will be knotted under the upper lip, and when those knots appear to have yellow heads they are far gone ; with a speedy remedy curable. They will be faint, and sweat standing in the stable, and sweat much at the roots of their ears, yet curable with a speedy remedy. But when he sweats at his fore bowels and his breath smell very strong and hot, then there is danger of his ever being cured : They will likewise, if not very bad, often rub their breech against a fence or post ; look
lean

lean and jaded, the hair will stare ; they won't thrive ; often strike their hind feet against their belly ; show signs of the cholick, lay down and stretch themselves, get up hastily, and immediately feed greedily : these are the principal signs : The cure is, if not incurable, first bleed him plentifully in the mouth, so as he may swallow down a large quantity of blood, or for want of that, take three pints of milk and sweeten it well with melasses ; then give it him blood warm, and let him stand near an hour so as the botts may loose their hold, which they will immediately do, and fill themselves with the blood, or milk and melasses ; then get one pint of linseed oil, give him one half, and the other next morning : It is so safe, that you may ride him or work him immediately ; this oil kills them in an instant : I have known the experiment often try'd by dropping a bott or worm into it, and they instantly died : It has been tried by other common oils, but the effect is not so soon, altho' it is believed that most oils will kill them, especially those that are of a close texture ; therefore if you use this remedy alone, and that before your horse is too far spent, which by the signs before recited you may readily know, as being taken from observation and experience, you need not lose any creature with that disorder, and your horse will afterwards thrive in an extraordinary manner ; so that it would not be amiss to give a horse thereof once or twice in a year, especially in the spring, just before he goes to pasture : Also it will purge away molten grease and gross humour in a great degree, and in a manner prevent disorders of the like nature ; the nature of its working has been found by experience to be quick and free from trouble. The original or breeding of the botts has gone thro' divers speculations,

but an ingenious friend inform'd me, that their progeny is actually from the horse-bee in the summer season, and are some months before they come to maturity: The manner, he says, is thus; he having observed a horse to have voided a bott with his dung, immediately took part of the dung, with the bott, and some earth, and put all together in a glass tumbler, and cover'd the tumbler close, and by often viewing he found its wings, legs and all parts to form, spring and grow, until it became a perfect bee, and that about the time those insects are first seen. His opinion is, that the horse imbibes them from the number of knits those insects fix on their coats, by nibbing and gnawing themselves: The certainty of which way the horse receive them, I shall leave to the ingenious to judge, but recommends the above remedy as certain. *Proved.*

N. B. The decoction of favin, and nitre dissolved in it, well sweetened with honey, will kill worms or botts in horses: This deserves to be rank'd with some of the best for botts or worms, and is very safe for children that has worms. The decoction of favin and hickory ashes, mixt with their feeds, will both prevent their breeding and kill them.

CCCCVIII. *A Sovereign drink for abundance of inward and other ailments, colds, coughs, surfeits, purfiness, heaving of the lungs, or any inward sickness.*

TAKE of wild comfry roots a good quantity, of elecampane roots half as much, moss from the spanish oak a good handful, ditany a good handful, fennelseed four ounces, finely powder'd, spice wood bark two double handfulls, hyssop a middling quantity, English gentian two ounces, if you can get it, wash

wash the roots clean and bruise them well; then put all together in a kettle, except one ounce of the fennelseed, and add thereto five quarts of spring water; then put it over a smart fire and let it boil until three quarts is consum'd, covering the kettle close all the while it is boiling; then take it off from the fire and let it stand till it be cool and does not steam any, keeping it still cover'd close, and when cool strain it, and press the roots and herbs that there may be liquor enough for three drinks, used in this manner, *viz.* Take of clear old cyder one quart, and one third part of the aforesaid decoction, and put it into a kettle, adding thereto a good piece of wheat household bread, rye will not do, of ginger one ounce or near, and a third part of the powder'd fennelseeds; then put it on the fire and let it boil four or five minutes; then take it off and cover it close until near cool; then add of butter two ounces, of honey as much, of melasses as much, but rather most honey; then take of rosin one ounce, powder and work it exceeding fine; then, the drink being lukewarm, give it the horse with a horn: you must not mix the rosin with the drink but still put some of it in the horntul as you drench him; three of these drinks, with the rosin, given in nine days, will cure almost any inward disease. These drinks are extreamly helpful to broken winded horses, and to a body-founder in a horse; also a special remedy for a mare that has slunk her foal; soon recovers a horse that is jaded and over done, and out of countenance and hide bound; they will quickly fatten and thrive after it. It would be well if, in any of those disorders, you would give, for fourteen or fifteen days, nourishing food, such as bursten oats, and mashes of bran and malt, a little at a time and often; after-

wards feed as you think proper. The vertues of those drinks are valuable, but shall leave my readers to determine by proof. *Proved, J. M.*

N. B. You may bleed in the neck or mouth if the disorder should require.

CCCCIX. *Of Bleeding.*

THE drawing of blood is certainly of great benefit in many disorders, as is laid down in this book, yet I cannot go the common road of many that recommend the frequent practice of it to healthy sound horses; by frequent practice thereof on such horses, I am certain it is a great diminisher of their natural strength, and takes from them two or three years that nature has allowed them: I grant, that to bleed a horse that has no apparent ailment upon him, let it be in what season of the year it happens, may suddenly make him thrive and get fat beyond expectation; then immediately to bleed to prevent the yellows, as generally from that case springs the disorder, is a general maxim that experience makes perfect: Therefore, I shall prescribe a few simple rules, that has been experimentally known and often practised by those that were very able judges of horses both internally and externally, far exceeding that custom of bleeding healthy sound horses in general, especially those that are much stabled. If you, twice in the summer, or once will do, take a double handful of green rue, shred very small, and give it your horse in bran at twice feeding, it will enliven him much, prevent worms and gross humours, and mightily refine the blood: Also in the winter season, about Christmas time, if you wet your bran with half a pint of stale chamberlie, for nine mornings successively, you will find it to be very serviceable to
your

your horse, for it will occasion a free passage to the blood juices to work in their proper tone, and thereby, perhaps, prevent gross humours and worms in the spring: I am certain that it will greatly strengthen their wind, when fed altogether on dry meat; you may also, near the spring, give in several feeds eight ounces of the flower of brimstone, but by no means the roll or stone brimstone; the reason is, it is impossible for you to pound it fine enough to give inwardly, and not unlikely but a worse disorder might ensue than what you intended to prevent: The flower is safe, and will quickly work and answer the expectation, which is to keep the blood and juices in their proper tone and proportion. You may also in the spring and fall take of smith's forge water, three pints, dissolve therein one ounce of any clear turpentine, one ounce of crocus martus, one ounce of the flower of brimstone, and give it your horse as a drench in the following manner: Take a hornful of the liquor cold as it stood, and put with the point of a case knife part of the brimstone and crocus martis on the liquor, in the horn, then throw it down; and so do in like manner till he has receiv'd it all: This purges by urine, and will work off any gross humour, and refine the blood and juices greatly; you may also take of forge water, three quarts, and put therein eight ounces of guiacum chips, which you may get at the apothecary's, sarsaparilla two ounces, raisins of the sun four ounces, their stones being taken out; boil all together until one quart is consumed, then take it off and strain it, and add thereto one quart of wine, clear beer or strong cyder, and sweeten it well with honey, and give it the horse, luke-warm, at two drinks: you may add half an ounce of the flower of brimstone to each drink:

By thus doing, with reasonable labour, accidents excepted, you may always have a healthy sound horse, free from colds, strains, windgalls, and gross humours.

N. B. The decoction of sassafras root is very good to wet the bran, spring and fall, every other morning for ten days.-----The decoction of spicewood is an exceeding comforter and nourisher of any lean poor horse.

CCCCX. How to make the oil of oats.

TAKE of milk two gallons, and warm it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt alum, which will make it run into a curd; then take out the curd and cast it away; then strain the whey through a coarse cloth into a clean vessel; then take a quarter of a peck of clean huskt oats that were never dried, put them into the whey, and set them on the fire and let it boil until the oates burst and be soft; then put them in a cullender that is full of holes, so that the whey may go gently from them without any pressing, (for you must keep the oats as moist as possible) this done put the oats in a frying pan and set them over the fire, stirring them continually till you see the vapour not to ascend upward, but, as it were, run about the pan; then suddenly take it off, and putting them into a press, there press them exceeding hard, and what comes from them is only the oil of them, which you must save in a close glass. There are other ways to distil and extract this oil, but this is of all others the most easiest and surest. This oil of oats is of all medicines and simples whatsoever the most excellent and sovereign for a horse's body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholesome and best food which doth belong to a horse. This oil being given, four or five
spoonfuls

spoonfulls at a time, in a pint of sweet wine, or a quart of strong ale, or some of the whey poured into the horse's nostrils, cures the glanders before all other medicines; it is also, given in the same manner, the best of all purgations, for it purgeth away all those venomous and filthy humours that feedeth the most incurable farcy whatsoever; and for my own part, so long as I can conveniently come by this oil of oats, will never, in any medicine whatsoever, use any other oil or unctuous matter than it, having found by experience that it is the sovereign of simples of that kind.

Proved.

CCCCXI. For cows that cannot calve.

THE signs are apparent; they will look dull about the eyes, and seem to be almost dead, which shews that the time of calving is then; and they will not at all strive for themselves. If they have been a while so, their milk will nearly dry up, and seems to look full of inward sickness, and wanting to calve but cannot. To help them, if they are lying, raise them, and when you have them very fair, you then may preceive, about an inch within their bearing, a sort of a string or membrane that binds very tight; then take a very sharp pen-knife and cut that string right above and below, so that the calf may come forth, for you may then draw it from her easily. Be sure that you take no more of the cleaning away than what is loose, lest you do harm to the cow, perhaps the remainder will soon follow; then take rosin finely powder'd, and dust it well on the calf-bag, and what remains of the cleaning, and thrust it up to its place again; but let it be remembered, that, before you begin, you give, in order to strengthen, nourish and comfort her, a

quart of strong beer or cyder, mull'd with eggs, ginger, butter and melasses, and after you have drawn the calf away, a good mash made of malt, and let her be kept warm, with nourishing food for some time; and by this doing she will recover and do well.

Proved by W. P.

CCCCXII. *For a cough in oxen.*

A NEW cough may be soon removed: Put one gallon of spring water in a vessel, and take barley malt a double handful, bean flower better than half as much, stitchwort an handful, bruise the stitchwort and put all together into the water, and stir it; let it stand twenty-four hours, then either morning or evening give it your beast with a horn, half at a time, one day after another. When you perceive he mends you may give it him four or five times every other day.

CCCCXIII. *For the cure of most inward diseases in cattle.*

TAKE of the roots of the tall rattlesnake weed, a good quantity thereof, some wash them, others does not, I rather think to shake the earth from them to be best, however bruise them well, and put them into a gallon or two of spring or running water, and let it steep twelve hours or more: When you use it pour off half a gallon thereof and give it your beast cold; you may repeat it three mornings, and you will find it excellent to relieve those disorders. If your cattle are very poor, it will help them much to bleed in the neck the first morning you begin to drench.

Proved.

N. B. Those drinks are exceeding helpful to poor cattle in the spring. You should not boil those roots
on

on any account, for when boil'd they are poison and immediate death to cattle.

CCCCXIV. *For cattle that have lost their cud.*

AN ox, or any other beast, will mourn and eat nothing, because he cannot digest what he has already eaten, if he happens to loose his cud, as perhaps by some occasion it may fall out of his mouth; to remedy this, some take part of the cud out of another beast's mouth of the like kind; if it be a cow that wants her cud, they take part of the cud of another cow, giving it her to swallow down, and she will be well; and so the like of other beasts. Others bruise a quantity of the herb call'd cudwort, and put to it a quantity of hog's fat or butter, and so makes the beast that hath lost its cud swallow it, and it will mend. Others put a piece of leaven, (rye is better than wheat) into the beast's mouth, and thereby it will recover: but if it be of a long standing, so that the creature is far spent and wasted, take out its tongue, prick the vein under it with an awl in two or three places, so that it bleed plentifully, and it will get well. *Proved, G. J.*

CCCCXV. *For cattle that are swelled by eating green corn, or juck like.*

YOUR cattle will be in danger of death, without a speedy remedy, if through the negligence of the keeper they eat of corn, barley, wheat or rye, before it be ripe. To help them, some people drive them up and down, and jump them over a fence, backward and forward, until the swelling asswage, which is very good, and they often recover thereby. Others throw a new laid egg, shell and all, into the beast's mouth, and break it therein, making

it

it swallow it with ale or beer. Some take a handful of nettle tops, well bruised and strained, with wine or honey-water. Others stamp or strain juniper leaves or green berries, with wine, and gives it the beast; some give the beast, in ale or beer, foot and the hard roe of a dry herring, well bruised; but let it be remember'd, with either of these remedies, all which are approved, that you be sure to rake your beast well for the better opening of the passage. P.

CCCCXVI. *For the coming down of the palate of the mouth in cattle.*

THE palate of the mouth of a beast, by hard work, will be apt to come down, but seldom other ways: Signs are, they will often sigh, and would fain eat but cannot. The cure is, first throw the beast on some soft place, then with your hand put it up again; when up, then prick or cut the palate so as it bleeds; then rub its mouth and palate well with honey and salt, well mixt, and turn the beast to pasture, for he must not eat no hay nor dry meat. If it should happen in the winter, let his food be wet bran or green corn. *Proved.*

CCCCXVII. *For the worms in cattle.*

THE signs are, they will look wild in their eyes, run to and fro bawling, also run at people, their veins are large and full, which demonstrate it to be the worms: The cure, first bleed in the neck, and catch the blood in a pail, add store of salt to the blood, and stir it well with a stick to keep it from clotting; then take a pretty quantity of melted hog's lard and some melasses, and stir them in the blood and salt; then give it the beast as a drench; two hours after the beast has taken the drench, take
of

of rum one gill, of gunpowder a large spoonful, shake and stir all together ; teem it into the beast, and this will cure. *Proved.*

CCCCXVIII. *For cows that don't clean well, or a great while before they do.*

I CAN find no certain remedy as yet laid down by authors in order to provoke and bring away the cleaning speedily ; I have been credibly informed that those things underneath are very good and infinitely helpful in these cases : take three rattles from the rattle snake, pound them fine, and give it in mull'd cyder, with store of ginger, the eggs must be well beaten, shells and all ; this I find the most certain. Or take of tansey roots, what quantity you like, and boil them in springwater, as much as you may think sufficient for a good drench ; then take three or four eggs, beaten well, shells and all, and add thereto foot and ginger a good quantity, mingle all together, and sweeten it with melasses ; being lukewarm, give it the cow in the manner of a drench, which has been found to be very helpful in such cases.-----Others boil favin and gives the cow the decoction in a mash of bran and malt, and says it is an immediate remedy.

CCCCXIX. *Things good to breed milk in kine.*

I F your cow's milk, after she has calved, comes not down, take some coriander and anniseeds, (for want of anniseed fennelseed will do) what quantity you please ; pound the seeds very fine and put them into a quart of strong posset drink, made with beer, and give her a quart two or three mornings ; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increase

of milk. It will assuredly cause it to spring and come down in abundance. *Proved.*

CCCCXX. *To know if cattle be sound.*

GRIP them on the back with your hand, behind the fore shoulder, and if not sound they will shrink back, and almost fall down, on the contrary, if sound, they will not shrink in the least. *Proved.*

CCCCXXI. *For the disease in the Guts in cattle, if it be the flux, cholick, or any such like thing.*

IF at any time your beast be troubled with the cholick or belly-ach, or a gnawing of the guts, the signs will be apparent; it will speedily give ease if you boil good store of sweet oil in the water it drinks. For the bloody-flux, give the beast some powder of wood-rose seeds, dry'd and well bruis'd, brew'd with a quart of ale, and it will cure him. *P.*

CCCCXXII. *For an old cough.*

A CERTAIN cure is, to steep two pound of hyssop in half a gallon of spring water, made thick with ground pease, or good wheat bran, or fine wheat and the roots of leeks, clean washt and beat well together, given the beast fasting. You may also bruise common garlick with dragon-water, new ale and butter, any quantity you think proper, and, being luke-warm, give it the beast, and repeat it as you see occasion requires. *Proved.*

CCCCXXIII. *For any inward disease in cattle.*

TAKE a handful of wormwood and as much rue, boil them in a quart of ale, let it be strained, put into it two spoonfuls of the juice of garlick, as much housleek, and as much London treacle: Make it luke-warm,

warm, mix them well together, and give it the beast, and you shall in a short time see the virtue of it against any inward disease in cattle.

CCCCXXIV. *For a cow that hath newly calved wanting milk.*

ANNISEEDS boiled and given in a warm mash to a cow that has newly calved, being poor, and without milk, is very good for the increase thereof. Colewort leaves, boil'd or raw, will do the like. Also barley and fennelseeds boil'd, is exceeding good.

Proved, G. J.

CCCCXXV. *For the overflowing of the gall in Cattle.*

IF the skin and eyes of your beast look yellow, it is a true sign of the overflowing of the gall; the cure is, first bleed in the neck; take about two quarts of blood; afterwards for three mornings fasting, give this drench; Take of sweet milk two pints, of saffron and turmerick a middling quantity, mixt all together, and give it, and it will speedily help.

Proved, G. J.

CCCCXXVI. *To help cattle that cannot piss.*

TAKE cardus a good quantity, and steep it in white wine a whole night; then strain it and give it your beast. You may also take sow-thistle and anniseeds, or fennelseeds, a good quantity, bruise the feed well, two or three onions sliced, steep all together in clear cyder, or white wine, all night or longer; then strain it and give it your beast. It will force urine and increase appetite.

Proved, G. J.

CCCCXXVII.

CCCCXXVII. For an ox or a cow that has accidentally taken venom.

YOUR ox or cow will commonly gape and eat no meat, stand and hold their heads down and mourn. If they have eaten any venomous grafs or such like, give them to swallow down a middling large white onion, bruised well, mixt with vinegar; but before you give it, be sure you rub their mouths and tongues well with it; you may add salt to the onion and vinegar.

Proved.

Cure for the Botts. Drench your Horse with 1 pint of milk & 1 pint of Molasses. then Give a pint of milk with Indigo and give it to him.
Approved by, = Henry Beard,

The E N D.

^{bram}
For a Hunge, Take Snake root Spicewood
and Sasapras root boil them together
& give to him in his feed ^{when done} H. B.

A T A B L E

A

T A B L E

OF DRUGS and HERBS, and where to
be had.

A

A *Ristolochia longa*, birthwort, or hartwort, at the Apothecary's. *Small snakeroot*, nearly the same quality. *Ameos*, or bishops-weed, in Gardens. *Angelica root*, or seed, of the same nature. *Arsesmart*, common, that which bite the tongue is the best. *Auripigmentum*, at the Apothecary's. *Avens*, an herb common in the woods, grows like agrimony, but smaller. *Asphodelles*, see daffodills, in gardens. *Aqua vitæ*, wiskey, or brandy will answer the same end. *Anniseeds*, common. *Agnus castus*, or the chaste tree; at the Apothecary's. *Agrimony*, in the woods, common. *Asb* black, common by runs and creeks. *Aloes*, at the Apothecary's. *Armoniac*, at Do. *Agarick*, at Do. *Arsenick*, at Do. *Allum*, at stores.

B

Betony, in woods or gardens, common. *Broom*, in gardens. *Bearsfoot*, or black hellebore, common. *Betony water*, in flat low ground. *Bay-tree*, or berries at the Apothecary's. *Brooklime*, in runs, water-creffes has the same effect. *Beets*, common in gardens. *Barm*, what works from new beer.
Benjamin,

Benjamin, a root, at the Apothecary's. *Brimstone*, at stores. *Bdellium*, at the Apothecary's. *Box-tree*, in gardens. *Brandywine*, or spirits of wine, at the Apothecary's. *Bolearmoniac*, an earth, at the Apothecary's.

C

Calamint, or mountain mint, common. *Cumminseed*, at the Apothecary's; fennelseed may answer the same effect. *Carthamus*, in gardens, called by the common people in a America saffron. *Colewort*, in Gardens. *Cresses*, two sorts, town or water, common. *Cellendine*, in gardens, common. *Coloquintida*, at the Apothecary's. *Castorium* at do. *Cantharides*, or Spanish flies, at the Apothecary's. *Ceruse*, white or red lead, at do. *Cassia*, at do. *Crocus martis*, at do. *Cinnamon*, at do. *Coperas*, at stores, the white at the apothecary's. *Cardus Benidictus*, in gardens, common. *Caroline*, at the Apothecary's. *Chickweed*, to be found about New-castle. *Cullumbine*, in gardens. *Clary*, common. *Comfry*, common, wild or tame. *Centaury*, common. *Corianderseeds*, at the Apothecary's. *Carrawayseed*, at do. *Cardamus*, common. *Camomile*, common. *Cudwort*, not common; the running clubmoss will answer the same purpose. *Clownswoundwort*, and clownswort, is very common in the woods.

D

Dill, in gardens. *Ditany*, see calamint, common. *Diaphera*, at the Apothecary's. *Dialthea*, at do. *Dock* red, see red dock, burdock, common. *Diascordium*, at the Apothecary's.

E

Euphorbium, a gum, at the Apothecary's; be
carefu

careful of giving much inwardly, but excellent for wounds. *Enula campana*, see elecampane, in gardens
Elm-tree, common. *Elder*, common.

F

Fennugreek, in gardens of botanists or Apothecaries.
Figs, at stores. *Furmotory*, common. *Folesfoot*, see
 coltsfoot. *Fennel*, in gardens, and wild, common.
Frankincense, at the Apothecary's. *Fringetree*, grows
 by running waters, and bears strings of white flow-
 ers in the spring; to be found by bogs on brandy-
 wine.

G

-----*Garlick*, in gardens, and wild, com-
 mon. *Groundsel*, serton, or butterweed, grows in
 new cleared land, and by the sides of roads. *Guia-
 cum*, *lignum vitæ*, at the Apothecary's. *Gentian*,
 at do. two kinds, one common in the country, bear-
 ing tufts of blew flowers in the fall. *Galbanum*,
 at the Apothecary's. *Gerologundium*, at do. *Gum-
 dragon*, at do. *Galls of aleppo*, at do. see oak galls.
Ginger, at stores.

H

Horseholm, see holly tree. *Hartstongue*, found
 on rocks and north sides of hills. *Hogfennel*, see
 wild or garden loveage. *Hoarhound*, common.
Hemlock, common. *Houslee*, common. *Higtaper*,
 see mullin, common. *Hysop*, in gardens. *Horse-
 mint*, wild mint. *Hartsborn*, deer horn. *Hony*,
 common. *Heild*, the grounds of beer. *Hempseed*,
 common. *Hellebore black*, in the gardens of bota-
 nists.

Y

Ivy

I

Ivy wall, see ivy berries. *Ivy* ground, two sorts, common. *Ivory* white, at the Apothecary's. *Juniper*, at do. or botanists gardens.

L

Liver-wort, two sorts, common. *Lignumvitæ Guaiacum*, at the apothecary's. *Long pepper*, see red pepper, chian. *Lavender cotton*, in gardens. *Lillies* white, in gardens. *Lapis caliminaris*, at the Apothecary's. *Lime*, common. *Leeks*, in gardens common. *Liquorishball*, or stick, at the Apothecary's.

M

Motherwort, common. *Mugwort*, common. *Maidenhair*, common in the woods. *Mechoacan*, at the Apothecary's. *Melilot*, common. *Mercury* herb, nearly of nature with the dock. *Mistletoe*, common. *Misledine*, common. *Mithridate*, at the Apothecary's. *Mustard*, in gardens and wild. *Mallows*, white and marsh, common. *Moss*, divers kinds, common. *Mastick*, a gum at the Apothecary's. *Myrrh*, at do. or in botanists gardens, or in the Jerseys, or Suffex county.

N

Nep, see catmint, common, Good for many uses. *Nettles*, common. *Nutmegs*, at stores. *Nut-oil* at the apothecary's.

O

Origanum, or wild marjorum, common in the country. *Osmond* royal, or water-fern, common in low ground. *Oyl of Speck*, at the curriers, made of the shavings of leather. *Oxycroceum*, at the Apothecary's.

theary's. *Onions*, common. *Ox-eye*, in botanists gardens. *Olibanum*, at the Apothecary's.

P

Pellitory, at the Apothecary's ; a plant not yet discovered here : Fume with brimstone in its stead. *Polypodeum*, common, the true sort grows on rocks. *Populeon*, see poplar root, common. *Pennyroyal*, common. *Parsley*, in gardens, common. *Plantain*, divers sorts, common, the white and broad mostly used for medicines. *Poak*, common. *Paradice grains*, at the Apothecary's. *Patch-grease*, piece-grease, or pitch grease, made of shoemaker's ends. *Pitch*, white or black, common ; burgundy do. at the Apothecary's. *Pepper*, round or black, at stores. *Precipitate*, at the Apothecary's. *Poppies*, in gardens.

Q

Quicksilver, at the Apothecary's.

R

Reu, in gardens, and wild. *Rosemary*, at the Apothecary's, or in botanists gardens. *Rosin*, at stores. *Raddishes*, see horse-raddish ; common in gardens.

S

Stavesacre, not as yet discover'd here ; spurge of the same quality. *Surewort*, see honeysuckle, common. *Shearman's flocks*, what comes off the dressing of cloth at the fullers. *Sowthistle*, a weed common. *Shepherdspurse*, common. *Spurge*, common in gardens, see stavesacre. *Silaris montani*, wild or garden lovage, common. *Solomons seal*, see polygnatum,

tum, common. *Sertion*, see groundsel or butter-weed, common. *Sparagus*, common in gardens. *Sage*, common in gardens. *Savin*, a shrub, in gardens. *Sallow*, see white willow, common. *Stichwort*, at the Apothecary's. *Snapweed*, or the womens dye-weed, common in runs and wet ditches. *Southernwood*, in gardens, commonly called old man. *Sanguinis draconis*, see dragon's blood, a gum, at the Apothecary's. *Sloes*, at the Apothecary's. *Soap*, common, soap castele, or black, at the Apothecary's. *Sugarcandy*, see white and red stone sugar, at the Apothecary's. *Sena*, an herb, at do. *Sallad-oil*, see oil olive, or sweet oil, at do. *Salnitre*, see saltpetre, at do. *Saffron*, at do. the best. *Storax*, at do. *Snails*, common. *Sanicula*, see fennel, white or black, bears-foot, common in the woods; the black nearly of a quality with black hellebore, the white very good in salves for wounds, grows with a high stalk with burs on the top, and smells very fragrant. *Spuma argenti*, at the Apothecary's. *Spuma nitre*, at do. *Smallage*, an herb, common. *Sasafras*, common. *Snakeroot*, Virginia and Seneca, common. Tall snake-root weed, common in all woods, see bistort.

T

Tansy, in gardens, and wild, common. *Turmeric*, common in the woods. *Tassiliginis*, at the Apothecary's. *Tar*, common, Barbadoes at the Apothecary's. *Turpentine*, common, oil or spirits, or venice, at the Apothecary's. *Trotter oil*, oil of sheeps feet. *Tobacco*, common. *Trainoil*, see whale oil, at the curriers. *Treacle-jean*, at the Apothecary's.

Violets,

V

Violets, in gardens or wild, common. *Vinegar*, a liquid, common. *Vitriol*, at the Apothecary's. *Verjuice*, the liquor of wild crab apples.

W

Wine spirits, at the Apothecary's; wine lees, the settling of the cask. *Woodroof*, a plant, common. *Woodroses*, a shrub or bryer, common. *Walnut* tree, common. *Willow*, a shrub, white and red, common. *Woodbine*, common. *Wax*, see bees wax, common. *Wormwood*, common in Gardens.

Y

Yarrow, common.

I N D E X.

	Page
T He first Ordering of the Running Horse,	9
How to diet an Horse for a Match that is fat, foul, or newly taken from Grass or Soil, being the first Fortnight,	11
Considerations concerning Heats,	18
The second Fortnight's Keeping,	19
The First Bread,	20
The first Scowring,	25
The Ordering of the Horse after this Scowr- ing,	ibid.
The Third Fortnight's keeping,	28
The Second Bread,	29
The Fourth and last Fortnight's Keeping,	30
The Last Bread,	ibid.
General Observations, Helps and Advertise- ments, for any man when he goeth about to buy a Horse,	34
Of sickness in general in Horses,	45
Certain necessary Observations and Advantages for every keeper to observe in fundry acci- dents,	46
Observations for sickness and health,	47
Observations from the dung,	ibid.
Observations from the Urine,	48
Observations in Feeding,	49
Observations in case of Lameness,	ibid.
Observations from the estate of the Horse's Body,	50
Observations from the privy Parts,	51
Observations from the Limbs,	ibid.
Observations	

Observations for the giving of water,
 Observations in the choice of Ground to run
 on,

ibid.

Observations from sweating,

53

Observations from the Horse's Hair,

ibid.

A Medicine for the Glanders,

55

A Medicine for any Cold that is not the Gland-
 ders,

56

For a Strain in the Shoulder,

ibid.

A cure for a Sinew-Sprung-Horse,

ibid.

The true manner of making those Balls, which
 cure any violent Cold or Glanders, prevent
 heavy sickness, purge away all molten
 Grease, recover a loose Stomach, and keeps
 the heart from fainting with exercise, and
 make a lean Horse fat suddenly,

57

An approved cure for the botts, and all manner
 of worms, of what nature soever,

58

Another most excellent receipt for the botts or
 any worms, which is the most easy and most
 certain, without sickness,

59

An uncontrollable way how to know the age
 of any horse,

ibid.

An excellent purgation, when any horse is sick
 of his grease, or any costiveness,

63

For laxativeness, or extream looseness,

64

An infallible help for the stone, or pain of urine,
 causing sickness,

ibid.

An approved medicine to cure and break any
 old grievous festered and rotten cold, and
 to dry up a foul running glanders,

65

Another for a violent cold,

ibid.

An excellent scowring, when other scowrings
 will not work,

ibid.

- 'An admirable water for any sore eye, or to clear any dim sight, as the moon-eyes, and the like, 66
- 'Another water, no less precious for the eyes than the former, ibid.
- 'The master-medicine of all medicines for a back sinew-strain, or any grief, pain, straightness, shrinking, or numbness of joints or sinews, ibid.
- St. Antayne, his only excellent medicine, for any strain or swelling, 67
- 'Another for any desperate old strain, whether it be in the shoulders, joints, hips, or back-sinews, ibid.
- 'An excellent charge for any new strain, or offence on the sinews, or any grief proceeding from heat, 68
- 'A perfect cure for any sinew strain, ibid.
- 'Markham's own balm, which hath never failed him for any strain in the shoulder, or other part, hidden or apparent; or any wind-gall, pain or swelling whatsoever, ibid.
- 'For swell'd or goured legs, whether it be by reason of the grease falling into them, or other accident, 69
- 'An approved cure for the scratches, or any disease of that nature, 70
- 'For any splint, spavin, ringbone, curb, or any other hard knot or excretion, 71
- 'An approved cure for the swift-cut, or any hewing on the legs whatsoever, 72
- 'For any farcy, mange, scab, or leprosy, whether in the mane or otherwise, ibid.
- 'For any founder, frettize, surbait, or any imperfection in the feet, ibid.
- To

To make hoofs grow quickly ; and to be tough and strong,	73
A general salve for any fore swelling,	ibid.
For a pearl, pin, and web, or any film on an Horse's eye,	ibid.
For greafe fallen into the legs, to help them at twice dressing, and to help the scratches,	74
For the glanders, an approved cure,	ibid.
To stay the glanders for a time, till you may make sale of your horse,	ibid.
An approved cure for the pains, mules, rats- tails, and the like,	75
To help an horse that galls between the legs, either through heat or evil dressing,	ibid.
For enterfering, to help it or hide it, for a small time,	ibid.
The best receipt that can be for brittle hoofs.	ibid.
To cure the scratches,	76
For the farcy,	ibid.
For to cure the canker in a horse's mouth,	ibid.
For to cure the scratches,	ibid.
For a horse that has a cold,	77
For a beast that staleth blood,	ibid.
For the botts,	ibid.
For a horse that hath got an over-reach, or a tread of the heel,	ibid.
For a horse that hath gotten a stroke or a bite on the eye,	ibid.
For the scratches,	78
For the swelling of a horse's back,	ibid.
For a strain,	ibid.
For a horse that is mangy,	ibid.
For the spleen,	79
A glister to expel wind,	ibid.

	Page
A Glister for the wind-colick,	79
For the wind-colick,	ibid.
How to order and keep any horse for pleasure, hunting or travel,	80
How to breed horses,	83
Wild mares are not best to keep for the race,	84
At what age your mare is first to be handled and covered,	ibid.
How to inforce your mares to come to be strained,	ibid.
The order of covering,	85
How to use your mare which is covered,	ibid.
How no mare shall go barren,	86
What time of the year is best for your mares to be covered,	87
What diet your stallion for the time he shall cover,	ibid.
How your breeding mare is to be used when she shall foal,	ibid.
How many years a horse will serve to cover your mares,	88
The best age for a horse or mare to get or bear colts, and how many years they will conti- nue good,	ibid.
What time of the year is best to wean the colts from their dams,	ibid.
What feeding is best for colts, from two years old and upwards,	89
Why English horses being taken up so young are not good,	90
The way to handle a sturdy horse,	ibid.
The using of horses after they be handled,	91
What feeding is best in winter for mares, and weanlings, of two years old,	ibid.
At	

At what age colts may best be handled,	92
To draw out any thorn or nail in any place,	93
A perfect drier of a green wound, or any other fore,	ibid.
For any anbury,	94
For the Flaps in any horse's mouth,	ibid.
To rot a fore or swelling,	ibid.
Directions how to lay a wound open, and where; and how to miss the veins under it, be it in body or legs,	ibid.
Hair's wool will stop bleeding sooner than most things,	95
A rare green ointment to heal any wound, old or new, quickly,	96
To take a film off an horse's eye,	97
A medicine to defend and keep back humours from a wound, so that it may heal the soon- er,	ibid.
Another for the same,	ibid.
A rare receipt for a farcion,	98
For a horse that hath his fundament fallen out; or for a cow that hath the mother fallen out,	ibid.
To kill lice in horses and cows,	99
For a stub or other hurt in or about the foot,	ibid.
To cleanse any wound old or new,	100
For the sleeping evil,	ibid.
To stop bleeding at the nose,	101
For the falling evil in an horse,	ibid.
For a cough old or new, or the heaving of his lungs,	102
For a canker in the tongue,	ibid.
For a vein that swells upon letting blood,	ibid.
For a navelgall,	103
For a horse that pisses blood,	ibid.
	For

	Page
For the mules,	103
For a Horſe burnt with a Mare,	104
A precious ointment that will cure any wound, old or new,	ibid.
For a farcion,	ibid.
For ſole beaten,	105
For a pricking in the foot,	ibid.
An ointment to ſkin or heal any wound or hurt,	106
To take down any ſwelling, being new, whe- ther it be broke or not broke,	107
For a quitterbone, though far gone, and hard to cure,	ibid.
For a foundred horſe,	108
For a ſplent,	110
For a through great ſplent,	ibid.
For a ſplent great or ſmall,	111
A water to cure any old or green wound, in man or beaſt,	112
A receipt to cure a horſe-peſtilence.	113
Another receipt for a febula, or horſe-peſti- lence,	ibid.
For the yellows,	ibid.
For a cheſt-founder,	114
For a ſwelling under the jaws, when a horſe hath the ſtrangling,	ibid.
For a ſore,	115
To make a horſe piſs that is troubled with the wind-cholick, or obſtruction in the bladder,	ibid.
To cure a poll-evil, which grows upon the top of the head,	116
For a fiſtula,	117
For the plague, peſtilence, garget, or murrain, in horſes,	118
	For

For a horse or cow that is poisoned by licking of venom, or is over-gorged,	119
For a horse or cow that maketh red water,	ibid.
For the mad staggers,	120
For the water-farcion,	121
For the ives,	122
For the wind-cholick,	ibid.
For a film in an horse's eye,	123
To cure a mallender,	ibid.
For an Apoplexy, or palsey,	124
For a farcion that lies all over the body of a horse,	ibid.
A true medicine to make an horse scour that is hide-bound, that is molten, that does not thrive nor fill; and to lay his coat if it stand right up,	126
To stop a thin scowring in cow or bullock, or any other creature,	ibid.
To kill lice in cattle,	127
To make hoofs that are brittle grow quickly, and to make them firm and strong,	ibid.
To heal a navel-gall, sore back, or a fet-fast,	ibid.
For a sinew-strain in the fore or after leg,	128
A scowring-drink,	ibid.
For brittle hoofs,	129
For a horse that is molten, and breaks out,	ibid.
A scouring-drink to cleanse his kidneys, if they be pained,	130
For a fleshy knot that is moving from the place where it grows,	ibid.
For a cow that hath a garget in her dug or udder	131
For a ring-bone,	ibid.
Another for the same,	132

Observations concerning the ordering of Cattle, &c. in the time of feeding, when there is great fullness of grafs: As in the months of May, June and July,	132
For a bite, blow, or film in the eye,	133
A precious ointment for an horse's eye, either for bite, blow, or film,	134
A gallant scouring to make a beast thrive winter or summer,	ibid.
For a strangling in the spring,	135
To kill lice in horses or cows,	ibid.
To make a horse stale or piss,	136
For an inward bruise with any stub,	ibid.
For a horse that hath rent his flesh about the belly, or elsewhere, or for any new wound,	ibid.
For an old cold with a cough,	ibid.
For a strangling in the guts: the cough of the lungs: for clearing the pipes, and giving much breath,	137
To cure the kernels under the horse's throat cheaply and suddenly,	139
For a cough of the lungs,	ibid.
For a broken winded horse,	140
For a cold in a beast either in winter or sum- mer,	ibid.
For the scratches,	141
For the scratches,	ibid.
Another for the same,	142
For foot-foundering,	ibid.
For the garget in the throat of a cow,	143
Another for a garget at the root of the tongue of a cow,	ibid.
For the garget in the guts of a cow or bullock,	144

- For the over-flowing of the gall, in a cow or bullock, 144
- For a horse or cow that makes red water, *ibid.*
- For a horse that is back-swankt, or for a strain in the kidneys, being over burthened in the hinder part, or in race-running, or by being over strained in the back, 145
- For a Canker in the head, 146
- For a dry scurvy mange, although it be from the head to the tail, of horse, cow, dog, or any thing else, 147
- For a blow or any other mischance, which causeth a swelling about the head, face, jaws or chaps, 148
- For a navelgall, *ibid.*
- For hard kernels under the throat, 149
- For a new sinew-strain, *ibid.*
- For an old sinew-strain that is swelled and hard on fore and after legs, 150
- For any old, hard and crusty knobs, or swellings, that have been a long time, let them be ever so hard, *ibid.*
- For old broken knees much swelled and hard, that have been long healed up, 151
- For a strain in the pastern, back or sinews, *ibid.*
- How to boil the charge of soap and brandy to a salve, *ibid.*
- For a swelling that comes by reason of wind getting into the wound; how to take it away, whether it be in the head or any part of the body, 152
- For a hot inflammation or soft swelling, that is new done, whether broken or not broken, 154

	Page
For a bruise or bite upon the cuds of an horse, that cause them to swell much,	154
To keep in your medicine, and keep out the wind,	155
Directions in particular cases,	ibid.
For a shoullder-strain,	157
For an old strain in the shoullder,	159
For the hurle-bone out of joint, or a little mis- carried,	ibid.
For a stile in the stifling-bone.	160
A speedy cure for a sinew-strain old or new.	161
For a poll-evil in the head of an horse,	162
For a through splent on both sides of the leg, by some called a great-bone-scrupin,	163
For a Malender,	164
For a looseness in the body of any beast,	ibid.
For a cold in summer, or when a horse doth not not fill,	165
For a sudden great heat, as in hunting, racing, or hard riding, that the horse's grease is melted,	ibid.
For a foundred horse,	167
For a back swanckt in the fillet of the loin: or for a wrench in the back-bone, about the na- vel-place: or for a strain in the kidneys, by being over burthened in the hinder parts, or over strained in the kidneys in race-running,	169
For a new wound made with a stake, or such like thing, stub or fork,	170
For a stub in the foot or heel: For an over- reach with the toe of the after-foot, upon the heel of the fore-foot; a tread or cut above the hair, or when a stone hath cut a horse's leg,	171

For a horse that is prick't in the shoeing, and afterwards festered,	171
For a horse that is prick't with a long channel nail,	172
For a brittle hoof,	173
For an horse's yard, foul and furr'd without, so that he pisses in the cod,	ibid.
When a horse doth not thrive, and when his coat stands staring, and doth not lie smooth : For an inward dry surfeit, that causeth the cods to swell, sometimes continually, and sometimes betwixt times, &c.	174
For a moist, hot, running surfeit, that falls out of his body into his legs,	177
To make a horse stale free, and constantly,	180
To cure the vives under the roots of the ears,	181
For the squinsey, or strangling, or cold, that breaks out at the nose, and hath run a year,	ibid.
For the staggers,	183
For a cold newly taken,	184
For an old cold which causeth the horse to run sometimes at one nostril, and sometimes at both, and hath done for a year together, and is knotted with kernels under his throat between his jaws,	185
For a canker in the mouth,	187
To cure a foul, rank, pocky farcion, which runs all over an horse, or in any particular part of his body,	188
For a farcy in the head,	190
For a swelling in the fore-legs or after-legs,	191
For a swelling in the brisket, below the chest,	ibid.
For a swelling with a blow upon the chest, or any other part,	192

	Page
For a farcy that is broken out in the legs,	192
For a water-farcy,	193
For a button farcy,	194
To cure the cords,	195
For a stumbling horse,	197
How to make diapente,	ibid.
How to make horse-spice,	198
To cure a ring-bone,	199
For a spavin as big as an egg,	200
To make a star in an horse's fore-head,	201
For the pains or scratches, or rotten broken cuts, putrified sinews,	202
For the strangullion in a horse,	203
For freting or gripping in an horse's belly,	204
To kill botts or worms,	205
For a fever in a horse,	206
For a dry inward mange,	207
To stop bleeding at the nose, or in the mouth, where the fleam or knife hath cut a great gash,	209
For a cold new or old, or a cough wet or dry,	210
For a young horse that hath taken a new cold,	211
For a new taken cold, with a coughing,	ibid.
For the botts,	ibid.
For a blood spavin,	212
For an old cold,	214
For a cold with a violent cough,	215
To cause an horse to vomit,	217
For a curb,	218
For a quitter-bone, old or new,	ibid.
A preparation before you give the black drink for the glanders,	221
	The

Page

The black drink for the glanders,	223
To cure the glanders,	224
For a fistula or gangrene in the foot,	ibid.
For a strain in the coffin-joint, or a five-bone in the socket of the hoof,	227
A purge for filthy slime, and to carry away the peccant humours which surfeits have in- gendred,	228
For an horse that is sick and surfeited by colds, whether in winter or in summer,	ibid.
For a strain in the pastern of an horse,	229
For an horse-cough,	230
A suppository to supple the guts, to dissolve and send forth all dry and hot excrements,	ibid.
Another suppository to be given, when you dare not without peril of his life give him any thing else inwardly,	231
A suppository to purge phlegm,	ibid.
A suppository to purge choler,	ibid.
A suppository to purge melancholy,	232
Another suppository,	ibid.
Directions for suppositories,	ibid.
To kill worms,	233
To purge by grass in summer,	ibid.
A Glister for a sick, surfeited, diseased horse,	234
A purge,	ibid.
Another purge,	235
A purge,	236
Of glisters, and their use,	ibid.
What a decoction is,	237
What quantity of broth or decoction is put in to make a glister,	ibid.
The quantity of drugs put into a glister,	238
What time is fit for an horse to keep his glister,	

	Page
The length of the glister-pipe,	238
A glister for a horse that is bound in his body and cannot dung,	ibid.
For another glister,	239
A glister restraining, to stop looseness,	240
A glister for a fat foul bodied horse, that is newly taken from grass, or for any sick, sur- feited, diseased horse,	ibid.
A glister for melancholy,	241
A glister to be given in case of a desperate sick- ness,	ibid.
A glister for the pestilence, and all fevers,	242
A lenitive glister,	ibid.
A glister for the cholick, or any sickness or grip- pings in the guts or belly,	243
Of sickness in horses,	ibid.
Of the head-ach, frenzy or staggers,	244
Of the sleeping evil,	ibid.
Of the falling-evil, planet-struck, night-mare, or palsy,	ibid.
Of the general cramp, or convulsion of sinews,	245
For any cold or cough whatsoever, wet or dry; or for any consumption or putrefaction of the lungs, whatsoever,	ibid.
Of the running glanders, or mourning of the chine,	246
Of hide-bound, or consumption of the flesh,	ibid.
Of the breast-pain, or any other sickness pro- ceeding from the heart, as the antocow, and such like,	247
Of tired horses,	ibid.
Of diseases in the stomach, as surfeits, loathing of meat or drink,	248
Of foundering in the body,	ibid.
Of	

Of the hungry-evil,	249
Of the diseases of the liver, as inflammations, obstructions, and consumptions,	ibid.
Of the diseases of the gall, and especially of the yellows,	ibid.
Another for the same,	250
Of the sickness of the spleen,	ibid.
Of the dropsy, or evil habit of the body,	251
Of the cholick, belly-ach, or belly-bound,	ibid.
Of the lask or bloody-flux,	ibid.
Of the falling out of the fundament,	252
Of botts and worms of all sorts,	ibid.
Of pain in the kidneys; pain to piss, or the stone,	ibid.
Of pissing of blood,	253
Of the strangullion,	ibid.
Of the cold-evil, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, shedding of the seed,	ibid.
Of the particular diseases in mares, as barren- ness, consumption, rage of love, casting foals, hardness to sole, and how to make a mare cast her sole,	254
Of drinking venom, as horse-leeches, hen's- dung, &c.	255
Of suppositories, glisters, and purgations,	ibid.
Of neefings and frictions,	256
Of diseases in the eyes,	ibid.
Of the imposthume in the ear, poll-evil, fistu- la, swelling after blood-letting, any galled back, canker in the withers, setfast; wens, navel-gall, or any hollow ulcer,	257
Of the vives,	ibid.
Of the strangle, or any boil or botch, or other imposthume whatsoever,	ibid.

	Page
Of the canker in the nose, or any other part of the body,	258
Of stanching of blood, whether it be at the nose, or proceeding from any wound,	ibid.
Of pain in the teeth, or loose teeth,	ibid.
Of diseases in the mouth, as blood-rifts, liggs, lamprass, camery, inflammation, tongue-burnt, or the barbes,	259
Of the crick in the neck,	ibid.
Of the falling of the crest, manginess in the main, or the shedding of the hair,	ibid.
Of pain in the withers,	260
Of swaying the back, or weakness in the back,	ibid.
Of the itch in the tail, or the general scab or manginess, or of the farcy,	ibid.
Of foundring in the feet,	261
Of any halting which cometh by strain or stroke, either before or behind, from the shoulder or hip down to the hoof,	ibid.
Of the splent, curb, bone-spavin, or any knob, or bony excression, or ring-bone,	262
Of the mallender, selander, pains, scratches, mellet, mules, crown-scab, and such like,	ibid.
Of any upper attaint, or nether attaint, or any hurt by over reaching,	263
Of wind-galls,	ibid.
Of interfering or shackle-galls, or any gallings,	ibid.
Of the infirmities of hoofs,	264
Of the blood-spavin, or hough-bony, or any other unnatural swelling,	265
Of wounds in the feet, as gravelling, pricking, fig, retrait, or cloying,	ibid.
Hurts on the cornet, as the quitter-bone or mat-long,	266
	To

Page

266

ibid.

ibid.

267

ibid.

ibid.

268

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

269

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

270

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

271

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

272

ibid.

ibid.

273

ibid.

ibid.

274

ibid.

ibid.

ibid.

	Page
Of the fig,	274
For fore eyes,	275
How to burn salt,	ibid.
For the canker in the eye,	276
A most approved cure for blindnes,	ibid.
Another for the same,	277
For dimness of sight, or blindnes, if the ball of the eye be found,	ibid.
Another,	ibid.
For purfick or broken wind,	278
A never failing cure for any cold, cough, hoarf- ness, wheefings, &c. in man or beast,	ibid.
For a cold in the head, or glanders,	ibid.
For a dry overgrown cold or cough,	279
For the yellows,	ibid.
For costiveness or belly-bound,	ibid.
For a farcy,	280
For the tetter,	ibid.
A certain cure for a sinew-strain,	ibid.
The master medicine for any wind-gall, sinew- strain, blood-spavin, splint, curb, &c.	281
For wind-galls,	ibid.
For a desperate strain that has been a long time, and imagined to be past cure, the sinews and swelling being bony, hard and knotted,	282
For the crown scab,	ibid.
For a strain in the stifle,	ibid.
For the mange,	283
For a sinew-strain,	ibid.
For a horse new galled with a saddle or collar,	ibid.
A fine poultis for a new strain,	284
For a swelling in any part of the head,	ibid.
For an old ulcer in man or beast,	ibid.
For the scratches,	ibid.
An	

An approved and certain method to take away any splint,	285
How to make the powder of honey,	ibid.
For a horse that is gored with a stake or such like,	286
To cure a wound made with shot, gunpowder, lime, or any fire,	ibid.
For the bite of a mad dog,	ibid.
For a canker,	287
To dissolve humours,	ibid.
For a fistula,	ibid.
The string-halt,	288
To heal the biting or stinging of serpents, or any venomous beast whatsoever,	ibid.
For brittle hoofs,	ibid.
For the vives,	ibid.
To harden any softness,	289
For bones out of joint,	ibid.
Of the rage of love in mares,	ibid.
For a mare that has cast her foal,	290
Of gelding of colts or old horses,	ibid.
To get horse colts,	ibid.
The shape of the perfect horse,	291
To make hair smooth, sleek and soft,	ibid.
For costiveness in the body,	ibid.
For the bite of a mad dog, or bite or sting of serpents,	ibid.
For the founder in the body,	292
For all fevers in general,	ibid.
Against poison or venom,	ibid.
For a lax or much scowring,	ibid.
For the botch in the groin, or imposthume,	293
To keep a horse that he shall not neigh,	ibid.
How to make unguentum basilicon,	ibid.
How	

	Page
How to make the oil of red cedar,	293
An exceeding drench for botts and worms, or a foul stomach,	294
How to make black-ash lie for the curing of ul- cers, pole-evils, fistulas, and the like,	ibid.
Of the diseases incident to mares, and of the bar- renness of the womb,	295
For broken bones,	ibid.
An approved cure for the fistula,	296
An approved cure for the mourning of the chine,	297
A certain cure for a horse that is hide-bound,	298
General drenches and medicines for all inward diseases or surfeits in horses,	ibid.
Three excellent and well approved medicines for any cold, dry cough, shortness of breath,	300
Of rowelling,	301
For botts or worms,	302
Another,	ibid.
For a farcy,	ibid.
For a ring-bone,	303
For a horse when he is badly surfeited,	ibid.
For foundering of the body,	304
A most certain and approved cure for any hurt upon the cronet,	ibid.
For a pole-evil,	305
For foot foundering either old or new,	ibid.
For a cough,	306
An excellent scowring for a running horse, where molten grease must be taken away,	ibid.
To make hair grow quick,	ibid.
For wens in any part of the body,	ibid.
Relief for a tired horse,	307
To stop bleeding at the nose,	ibid.
For the botch in the groin, or any imposthume,	ibid.
How	

	Page
How to make a black star,	307
For the dropſy, or evil habit of the body,	308
For the dropſy in man or beaſt,	ibid.
For a canker, or ſore in any part of the body,	ibid.
For the ſtrangles,	ibid.
For the ſtone, an excellent receipt,	ibid.
For the botts,	309
An ointment for bliſters,	ibid.
A general and certain cure for any ſtrain in the ſhoulder, or any hidden part,	ibid.
An Indian cure for old ulcerous ſore legs in men,	310
For a fiſtula or pole-evil,	ibid.
For the mad itch,	311
To ripen impoſthumes,	ibid.
For cankerous tumours in the feet,	ibid.
For galled ſhoulders,	ibid.
For a fiſtula or pole-evil at the firſt coming,	ibid.
For the haw, commonly called the hoakes,	312
For a ſwelling after blood letting,	313
For any wound that is made with a ſtake, or gored with a cow, or rent with a chain or ſuch like,	314
For an apoplexy, falling-evil, ſtaggers, and phrenſy,	ibid.
For a fiſtula or pole-evil,	316
For the glanders,	318
A plaifter for a ſore back,	319
For botts and worms,	320
A ſovereign drink for abundance of inward and other ailments, &c.	322
Of bleeding,	324
How to make the oil of oats,	326
For cows that cannot calve,	327
For	

	Page
For a cough in oxen,	328
For the cure of most inward diseases in cattle,	ibid.
For cattle that have lost their cud,	329
For cattle that are swelled by eating green corn, or such like,	ibid.
For the coming down of the palate of the mouth in cattle,	330
For worms in cattle,	ibid.
For cows that don't clean well, or a great while before they do,	331
Things good to breed milk in kine,	ibid.
To know if cattle be found,	332
For the disease in the guts in cattle, if it be the flux, cholick, or any such like thing,	ibid.
For an old cough,	ibid.
For any inward disease in cattle,	ibid.
For a cow that hath newly calved wanting milk,	333
For the overflowing of the gall in cattle,	ibid.
To help cattle that cannot piss,	ibid.
For an ox or cow that has accidentally taken venom,	334

Markham, Gervase, *Citizen ...experienced farrier...*, WZ 270 M345c 1764

Condition when received: The full leather binding with four raised cords was in poor condition. The covers were very abraded and the spine suffered loss at the head. The text block was stable however, remnants of the front and back paste downs were delaminating from the inside covers. The last gathering was breaking along the gutter at the tail. The title page was very soiled and detached. Pages 334-358 suffered insect infestation along the foreedges. In addition, there was minor text loss. Pages 361-364 were dog-eared with small losses along the foreedges. Page 223 bore a 4 inch tear at the top edge.

Conservation treatment: In preparation for photography and use of images on NLM website, only specific pages were conserved at this time. The t.p. was surface cleaned using polyvinyl eraser crumbs (Staedtler) moved across the surface with a soft brush. The single page was submerged in a series of cool baths using deionized water conditioned to pH 8.0 using a combination of ammonium hydroxide (Nasco) and calcium hydroxide (Nasco). After washing, the acidic content was lower and the color was a dark cream. The t.p. was guarded and hinged using natural usu mino paper secured with a combination of wheat starch paste (zin shofu, BookMakers) and methylcellulose (A4M, Talas). Pages 223, 335 & 361-364 were repaired along the foreedges using natural tengujo and kizukishi papers (Japanese Paper Place) as was also the foreedge of the t.p.
Treatment carried out by Rachel-Ray Cleveland
Conservator, National Library of Medicine 07/2008

